*Die Entstehung des Bundes‐Verfassungsgesetzes 1920*

Carl Friedrich Haak and Peter Andorfer

Überblick

Dieses TEI ODD umfasst die Editionsrichtlinen und Datenmoddelierung für das Projekt »Die Entstehung des Bundes‐Verfassungsgesetzes 1920«

# Einführung

Es werden die einzelnen Aspekte des Edierens in den Blick genommen sowie die entsprechende Modellierung des Textes mit TEI XML anhand von Beispielen erläutert. Außerdem wird beschrieben, wie man die Modellierung mit der Editionsumgebung im Oxygen-Editor vornimmt.

Diese Datei wird laufend weiterentwickelt und aktualisiert. Vorschläge zur Anpassung von allen Seiten sind willkommen.

Stand: September 2023

# Workflow Texterfassung

Nachdem die gescanten Dokumente auf goobi gesammelt wurden, werden sie in Transkribus semiautomatisch transkribiert. Ziel dieses Schrittes ist möglichst alle basalen textuellen Informationen zu sichern, typografisce und strukturelle Informationen können ignoriert werden. Der edierte Text wird in diesem Arbeitschritt also zunächst als Buchstabenkette betrachtet.

Nach erfolgter Transkription wird der Text automatisiert in einem Export-Repository verfügbar gemacht. Bearbeiter:Innen wählen einen unbearbeiteten Text und kopieren ihn in das Repository für manuelle Korrekturen und das tagging. In diesem Bearbeitungsschritt werden unter anderem

* die semantischen Strukturelemente des Dokuments codiert
* Entitäten – wie Personen, Orte und Texte – mit den Indizes / externen Quellen verlinkt
* Metadaten erzeugt werden
* die Transkriptionen der Dokumente auf Integrität überprüft

Der Stand der Bearbeitung wird in den Metadaten festgehalten. Wenn der Bearbeitungsstand eines Dokumentes auf abgeschlossen gesetzt ist und das Dokument zur ›Publikation‹ freigegeben wird, wird es automatisiert auf der Website publiziert.

# Arbeiten im Oxygen XML Editor

Das wichtigste Tool zur Arbeit mit und in den XML-Dateien ist der Oxygen XML Editor.

## Kurzüberblick XML

Bei XML (kurz für **eXtensible Markup Language**) handelt es sich um eine Auszeichnungssprache, die zur hierachischen und eindeutigen Darstellung von Daten in Texten dient. Es bietet also eine einfache Möglichkeit, in Texten enthaltene Informationen explizit und einheitlich zu kennzeichnen. Dies geschieht unabhängig von deren graphischer Präsentation. Die Auszeichnung erfolgt in Reintext, was XML sowohl menschen- als auch maschinenlesbar macht.

Die konkrete Auszeichnung wird mithilfe von **Tags** vorgenommen. Sie stehen in spitzen Klammern (<...>) und sollen der gekennzeichneten Information eine konkrete und einheitliche Bezeichnung geben. Tags treten entweder als Tag-Paare auf, die einen bestimmten Textabschnitt umschließen (<starttag> ... </endtag>) oder als selbstschließende Tags, die bspw. im Falle von Seitenumbrüchen die entsprechende Stelle im Text explizit kennzeichnen (<tag/>). Die Kombination aus Start-Tag, Textabschnitt und End-Tag wird als **Element** bezeichnet, ein selbstschließendes Tag hingegen als **leeres Element**. **Attribute** ermöglichen eine Konkretisierung der ausgezeichneten Textstelle durch Hinzufügen zusätzlicher Informationen. Sie werden innerhalb des Start-Tags notiert und bestehen aus einem Attributnamen, der die Zusatzinformation klassifiziert, und einem Attributwert, der in Anführungszeichen angegeben wird (<starttag attributname="attributwert">).

**Beispiel:** Die Auszeichnung eines Kommentars erfolgt durch ein <note>-Tag. Dieses klassifiziert die Textstelle allgemein als eine Anmerkung jeglicher Art. Um diese Infomation zu konkretisieren, können nun Attribute hinzugefügt werden. Handelt es sich also um eine editorische Anmerkung wird dem Tag, das Attribut *@type*="editorial" hinzugefügt; eine Anmerkung auf dem Textträger erhält hingegen das Attribut "original". Das vollständige Element lautet wiefolgt: <note type="editorial"> bzw. <note type="original">.

Die Grundstruktur von XML zeichnet sich vor allem durch zwei Aspekte aus: Verschachtelung und Hierarchisierung. Sie wird allgemein als **Baumstruktur** bezeichnet. Elemente können innerhalb von anderen Elementen stehen - sie sind also teils über mehrere Ebenen ineinander verschachtelt - dürfen sich jedoch nicht überlappen. Jedes Element, das innerhalb eines Elements steht, muss innerhalb dessen auch wieder geschlossen werden (z.B. <starttag1 attribut="attributwert">...<starttag2>...<endtag2>...<endtag1>).

Der größte Vorteil von XML liegt wohl in dessen Anpassbarkeit. Da es selbst keine Vorgaben zur genauen Benennung oder Strukturierung der Tags und Attribute festlegt, lassen sich diese für die Bedürfnisse unterschiedlichster Forschungsvorhaben anpassen und erweitern. Dennoch existieren bereits zahlreiche Standards, die für die als Grundlage für die Arbeit mit XML verwendet und angepasst werden können (z.B. der Standard der [Text Encoding Initiative (TEI)](https://tei-c.org)). Aus Erfahrung lässt sich jedoch sagen, dass die Anpassung der Auszeichungen ein gewisses Maß an Komplexität nicht übersteigen sollte, da mit steigender Komplexität auch Bearbeitungszeit und Fehlerquote steigen.

Ob ein XML-Dokument ›korrekt‹ ist lässt sich auf zwei Ebenen übreprüfen. Allgemein sollten alle Elemente korrekt ineinander verschachtelt sein, also die grammatischen Regeln der XML eingehalten werden. Ein Dokument, dass diesen Reglen entspricht, gilt als "wohlgeformt". Konkrete Regeln werden jeweils mittels eines **XML-Schemas** festgelegt, gegen das validiert wird. Entspricht ein XML-Dokument den Vorgaben des Schemas gilt es als "valide".

Quellen: Vogeler, Georg/Sahle/Patrick: XML. In: Jannidis, Fotis/Kohle, Hubertus/Rehbein, Malte (Hg.): Digital Humanities. Eine Einführung. Stuttgart, 2017, S. 128-146; [XML Tutorial, w3Schools](https://www.w3schools.com/xml/default.asp).

# Daten-/Dokumentenstruktur

Die digitale Edition der Dokumente basiert auf den Standards der [Text Encoding Initiative (TEI)](https://tei-c.org)

## Metadaten

**Metadaten** zu den Dokumenten und ihren Texten stehen im <teiHeader>, dazu zählen Informationen zu den einzelnen Dokumenten, zu ihrer Entstehung und Beschaffenheit oder ihrer editorischen Erschließung/Bearbeitung. Eine Vielzahl der im TEI-Header vermerkten Informationen wird automatisch generiert oder automatisch anderen Quellen (vor allem goobi) entnommen.

Die Struktur des <teiHeader> gestaltet sich wie folgt:

<**teiHeader**>  
 <**fileDesc**>  
  <**titleStmt**>  
   <**title** **type**="main">Kelsen Entwurf I</**title**>  
   <**title** **type**="sub">Die Entstehung des Bundes-Verfassungsgesetzes  
       1920</**title**>  
   <**principal**>  
    <**persName** **role**="acdh:hasPrincipialInvestigator">Olechowski,  
         Thomas</**persName**>  
   </**principal**>  
   <**funder**>  
    <**name**>FWF - Der Wissenschaftsfonds</**name**>  
    <**address**>  
     <**street**>Sensengasse 1</**street**>  
     <**postCode**>1090 Wien</**postCode**>  
     <**placeName**>  
      <**country**>A</**country**>  
      <**settlement**>Wien</**settlement**>  
     </**placeName**>  
    </**address**>  
   </**funder**>  
   <**respStmt**>  
    <**resp**>Digitalisierung (Fotografieren) des Archivmaterials</**resp**>  
    <**persName** **role**="acdh:hasDigitisingAgent">Lein, Richard</**persName**>  
   </**respStmt**>  
   <**respStmt**>  
    <**resp**>Digitalisierung (Fotografieren) des Archivmaterials</**resp**>  
    <**persName** **role**="acdh:hasDigitisingAgent">Gassner, Miriam</**persName**>  
   </**respStmt**>  
   <**respStmt**>  
    <**resp**>XML/TEI Datenmodellierung und Datengenerierung</**resp**>  
    <**persName** **role**="acdh:hasContributor"  
     **key**="https://orcid.org/0000-0002-9575-9372">Peter  
         Andorfer</**persName**>  
   </**respStmt**>  
   <**respStmt**>  
    <**resp**>XML/TEI Datenmodellierung und Datengenerierung</**resp**>  
    <**persName** **role**="acdh:hasContributor"  
     **key**="https://orcid.org/0009-0006-7740-542X">Carl Friedrich  
         Haak</**persName**>  
   </**respStmt**>  
  </**titleStmt**>  
  <**publicationStmt**>  
   <**publisher**>  
    <**orgName** **key**="https://d-nb.info/gnd/1226158307">Austrian Centre for  
         Digital Humanities and Cultural Heritage an der Österreichischen  
         Akademie der Wissenschaften</**orgName**>  
   </**publisher**>  
   <**publisher**>  
    <**orgName** **key**="https://d-nb.info/gnd/1026192285">Universität Wien.  
         Institut für Rechts- und Verfassungsgeschichte</**orgName**>  
   </**publisher**>  
   <**pubPlace** **ref**="http://d-nb.info/gnd/4066009-6">Vienna</**pubPlace**>  
   <**date** **when**="2023">2023</**date**>  
   <**availability**>  
    <**licence** **target**="https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/">  
     <**p**>The Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International (CC BY 4.0)  
           License applies to this text.</**p**>  
     <**p**>The CC BY 4.0 License also applies to this TEI XML file.</**p**>  
    </**licence**>  
   </**availability**>  
   <**idno** **type**="transkribus\_doc">1529199</**idno**>  
   <**idno** **type**="transkribus\_collection">195363</**idno**>  
  </**publicationStmt**>  
  <**sourceDesc**>  
   <**msDesc** **type**="invetory">  
    <**msIdentifier**>  
     <**institution** **key**="https://d-nb.info/gnd/37748-X">Österreichisches  
           Staatsarchiv</**institution**>  
     <**repository** **key**="https://d-nb.info/gnd/1601181-8">Archiv der  
           Republik (Wien)</**repository**>  
     <**idno** **type**="archive">AdR, Büro Seitz, Karton 7</**idno**>  
    </**msIdentifier**>  
    <**msContents**>  
     <**msItem**>  
      <**author** **role**="acdh:hasAuthor">Kelsen, Hans</**author**>  
      <**title**>Kelsen Entwurf I</**title**>  
     </**msItem**>  
    </**msContents**>  
    <**physDesc**>  
     <**objectDesc** **form**="">  
      <**ab**>Kelsen I (Titel des Dokuments "Entwurf I"), Zustand gut,  
             keine Anmerkungen, 126 Artikel</**ab**>  
     </**objectDesc**>  
     <**handDesc**>  
      <**ab**/>  
     </**handDesc**>  
    </**physDesc**>  
    <**history**>  
     <**origin** **from**="1919-05-01"  
      **to**="1919-11-30">Zwischen Mai und November  
           1919</**origin**>  
    </**history**>  
   </**msDesc**>  
  </**sourceDesc**>  
 </**fileDesc**>  
 <**profileDesc**>  
  <**abstract**>  
   <**ab**/>  
  </**abstract**>  
  <**creation**>  
   <**date** **from**="1919-05-01" **to**="1919-11-30">Zwischen Mai und November  
       1919</**date**>  
  </**creation**>  
 </**profileDesc**>  
 <**revisionDesc** **status**="draft">  
  <**change**>Strutktur erfasst</**change**>  
  <**change**>Entitäten verlinkt.</**change**>  
 </**revisionDesc**>  
</**teiHeader**>

### Status des Dokuments, Arbeitsstand

Der Status der Bearbeitung des gesamten Dokuments wird in der <revisionDesc> im Attribut *@status* notiert. Ist das Dokument noch in Bearbeitung, hat *@status* den Wert draft. Sind alle Arbeitsschritte für das Dokument abgeschlossen, hat *@status* den Wert done. Wird der bearbeitungsstand eines Dokumentes auf done gesetzt, wird es automatisiert auf der Website publiziert.

Es emfpiehlt sich, erfolgte Arbeitsschritte mittel der <change>-Elemente zu notieren, um einen Überblick über den Bearbeitungsstand zu bieten.

<**revisionDesc** **status**="draft">  
 <**change**>Strutktur erfasst</**change**>  
 <**change**>Entitäten verlinkt.</**change**>  
</**revisionDesc**>

## Haupttexte

Haupttexte umfassen den tatsächlichen Text der edierten Dokumente.

### Grundstruktur

**Dokumenttexte** stehen unmittelbar nach dem <teiHeader> innerhalb eines <text>-Elements, das den Beginn und das Ende des Werkstextes im XML-Dokument markiert. Der eigentliche Textinhalt steht wiederum in einem <body>-Element.

#### Der Inhalt

Der inhaltliche Haupttext findet sich im <body> eines XML-Dokuments, innerhalb eines <div>-Elements mit dem *@type*=main. Ein Haupttext beginnt in der Regel mit einem Titel <head>. Die einzelnen Texte sind in sich selbst vielfältig Baumartig strukturiert. Neben losen, allgemein bestimmten Struktureinheiten wie Kapiteln, Abschnitten und Unterabschnitten, existieren kleinere spezifische Strukturelemente wie Artikel, Absätze und Ziffern.

### Abschnitte und Unterabschnitte

Der Dokumententext wird im <text> inklusive aller Abschnitte in <div>-Elementen erfasst. <div>-Elementen, die einen größeren Dokumentenabschnitt repräsentieren, erhalten den *@type*="section"

Die Dokumente sind jedoch tiefer als auf nur einer Ebene strukturiert: sie enthalten teilweise komplexe verschachtelte Strukturen mit Abschnitten, Unterabschnitten, Unter-Unterabschnitten etc. Um dies zu codieren, können <div>-Element verschachtelt werden.

<**text**>  
 <**body**>  
  <**div** **type**="main">  
   <**head**>Titel des Dokuments</**head**>  
   <**p**>irgendein Text</**p**>  
   <**div** **type**="section">  
    <**head**>Titel des ersten Abschnitts</**head**>  
    <**p**>irgendein Text</**p**>  
    <**div** **type**="section">  
     <**head**>Titel des Unterabschnitts I.A </**head**>  
     <**p**>irgendein Text</**p**>  
    </**div**>  
   </**div**>  
   <**div** **type**="section">  
    <**head**>Titel des zweiten Abschnitts</**head**>  
    <**p**>irgendein Text</**p**>  
    <**div** **type**="section">  
     <**head**>Titel des Unterabschnitts II.A </**head**>  
     <**p**>irgendein Text</**p**>  
     <**div** **type**="section">  
      <**head**>Titel des Unter-Unterabschnitts II.A.a </**head**>  
      <**p**>irgendein Text</**p**>  
     </**div**>  
    </**div**>  
   </**div**>  
  </**div**>  
 </**body**>  
</**text**>

Jedes <div>-Element muss über eine *@xml:id*, verfügen, die der Identifikatoren-Gesamtsystematik folgt. Ids sollten ausschließlich über die im Schema angebotene Funktionalität automatisch generiert werden.

### Artikel

Da viele der Edierten Dokumente ebenfalls über Artikel verfügen, werden diese ebenfalls mittels <div>-Elementen erfasst. Da unterhalb der Artikel keine Strukturelemente existieren, die mittels <div>-Elementen erfasst werden, ist eine Angabe der Struktur-Ebene mittels eines *@n*-Attributes nicht nötig. Dass es sich um Artikel handelt wird mittels *@type*="aricle" markiert.

<**body**>  
 <**div** **type**="main"> [Umfasst das einzelne Werk im Gesamten] <**div** **type**="section">  
   <**head**>Abschnitt I. </**head**>  
   <**div** **ana**="article">  
    <**head**>Artikel XVII. </**head**>  
    <**p**>Gesetzesbeschlüsse der Landtage oder des Wiener Gemeinderates  
    <**lb**/>können wegen Verfassungswidrigkeit (Artikel 6 - 14 ) von  
         der <**lb**/>Staatsregierung binnen 14 Tagen nach Einlangen der  
         Mitteilung <**lb**/>und wenn gegen diese Beschlüsse im Sinne des  
         Artikels XVI zu- <**lb**/>nächst eine Vorstellung erhoben worden  
         ist, nach Ablauf weiterer <**lb**/>14 Tage beim  
         Verfassungsgerichtshofe angefochten werden; diese  
    <**lb**/>Anfechtung ist der Landesregierung unverzüglich auf dem  
         kürzesten <**lb**/>Wege mitzuteilen.</**p**>  
   </**div**>  
  </**div**>  
 </**div**>  
</**body**>

Jedes <div>-Element muss über eine *@xml:id*, verfügen, die der Identifikatoren-Gesamtsystematik folgt. Ids sollten ausschließlich über die im Schema angebotene Funktionalität automatisch generiert werden.

### Absätze

Der Text innerhalb von <div>-Elementen ist in <p>-Elementen strukturiert. Ein solches Element markiert entweder einen Absatz (typographisch markiertes Strukturelement eines Prosatextes) oder einen Paragraphen (ein Absatz als Strukturelement eines Gesetzestextes).

<**body**>  
 <**div**>  
  <**p**>[Absatz]</**p**>  
  <**p**>[Absatz]</**p**>  
 </**div**>  
</**body**>

Jedes <p>-Element außerhalb von <note> hat eine *@xml:id*, die der Identifikatoren-Gesamtsystematik folgt. Ids sollten ausschließlich über die im Schema angebotene Funktionalität automatisch generiert werden.

### Listen und Ziffern

Listen werden mit einem <list>-Element kodiert, jeder Listenpunkt wiederum mit einem <item>-Element umschlossen.  
Listentitel werden durch ein <head>-Element ohne weitere Attribute gekennzeichnet. Es steht an erster Stelle (first child) innerhalb des <list>-Elements.  
Listenelemente können zusätzlich verschachtelt werden, sprich ein Listenpunkt <item> kann eine untergeordnete Liste enthalten.

<**list**>  
 <**head**>Listentitel</**head**>  
 <**item**>Inhalt des Listenpunktes</**item**>  
 <**item**>Inhalt des Listenpunktes <**list**>  
   <**item**>verschachtelter Listenpunkt</**item**>  
  </**list**>  
 </**item**>  
</**list**>

Mit Ziffern versehene Aufzählungen innheralb der Paragraphen werden ebenfalls auf die oben beschriebene Weise mittels <list>-Element kodiert, jeder Ziffer wird als Listenpunkt (<item>) codiert.

### Tabellen

Tabellen werden mit einem <table>-Element gekennzeichnet, wobei sie stets zeilenweise dargestellt werden. Die einzelnen Zeilen werden durch ein <row>-Element gekenzeichnet. Jede Tabellenzeile <row> unterteilt sich wiederum in mindestens eine oder auch mehrere Zellen bzw. Spalten, die innerhalb des <row>-Elements durch ein <cell>-Element ausgezeichnet sind. Der eigentliche Tabelleninhalt steht innerhalb des <cell> -Elements.

Der Titel einer Tabelle wird mittels eines <head>-Elements gekennzeichnet und steht innerhalb des <table>-Elements an erster Stelle.

<**table**>  
 <**head**>Tabellentitel</**head**>  
 <**row**>  
  <**cell**>Erste Spalte</**cell**>  
  <**cell**>Zweite Spalte</**cell**>  
 </**row**>  
 <**row**>  
  <**cell**>Erste Spalte</**cell**>  
  <**cell**>Zweite Spalte</**cell**>  
 </**row**>  
</**table**>

### Hervorhebungen

Xml ist nicht dazu bestimmt, typografische Informationen als solche mimetisch zu kodieren. Die semantische Funktion typografischer Eigenschaften sollte jedoch in einigen Fällen kodiert werden. Hervorhebungen im Kelsen-Text werden mit dem Element <hi> ausgezeichnet. Generell sollten jedoch bsp. Überschriften **semantisch** bzw. entsprechend ihrer Funktion als <head> getagt werden.

* Sperrungen und/oder Schreibungen mit Versalien wie sie in Typoskripten häufig vorkommen
* sowie Schreibungen mit Kaptitälchen
* sowie Unterstreichungen

sollten in der Regel sämtlich mit <hi> ausgezeichnet werden, da sie tatsächlich bloße Hervorhebungen darstellen. Es wäre – wenn nötig – möglich, diese Kodierung durch *@rend*-Attribute weiter zu differenzieren, falls unterschiedliche Hervorhebungen verschiedene Funktionen erfüllen sollten.

<**text**>  
 <**body**>  
  <**div**>  
   <**p**>[...]<**hi**>selbstverständlich</**hi**> und unproblematisch war, daß es  
   <**hi**>einer</**hi**> besonderen [...]</**p**>  
  </**div**>  
 </**body**>  
</**text**>

### Seitenwechsel

Seitenwechsel werden erhalten und sollten im nomralfall keiner Bearbeitung bedürfen. Grundsätzlich werden die Seitenwechsel mit einem <pb>-Element markiert. Innerhalb eines Attributs *@n* sind die Seitenzahlen der neuen Seite (pb=pagebegin) als Attributwert hinterlegt, das *@facs*-Attribut verweist auf die zugehörige Abbildung, während *@xml:id* die zugehörige Id enthält.

<**text**>  
 <**body**>  
  <**div**>  
   <**pb** **facs**="#facs\_6" **n**="6"  
    **xml:id**="img\_0006"/>  
  </**div**>  
 </**body**>  
</**text**>

## Entiäten

Die edierten Texte enthalten bzw. referenzieren oder erwähnen Entitäten, die in verschiedene Klassen eingeteilt werden können. Das Markieren dieser Entitäten ermöglicht es, sie als solche vom umgegebenden Text zu unterscheiden und mit einer Indexansetzung zu verlinken, um so z.B. das Auffinden von Entitäten – equivalent zur Funktion eines Registers – zu vereinfachen.

Es folgt eine Liste der im Text zu referenzierenden Entitäten, deren Tagging stets durch das <rs>-Attribut mit *@type* und *@ref* erfolgt.

### Literaturangaben

Literaturangaben werden mittels des Elements <rs> und des *@type*=lit ausgezeichnet.

Um Literaturangaben, die auf die gleichen Quellen verweisen, miteinander in Beziehung zu setzen, wird den <rs>-Elementen ein *@ref*-Attribut zugewiesen, dass auf die Zotero-Id des refrerenzierten Textes verweist.

<**text**>  
 <**body**>  
  <**div**>  
   <**p**>  
    <**rs** **type**="lit" **ref**="zotero id">  
     <**rs** **type**="person" **ref**="#p123">Gerhard Anschütz</**rs**>, Die  
         Verfassung des Deutschen Reichs vom 11. August 1919, 14. Aufl.,  
         Berlin 1933, 30–21. </**rs**>  
   </**p**>  
  </**div**>  
 </**body**>  
</**text**>

### Gesetzesangaben

Analog zu der Literatur werden auch Gesetzesangaben mittels eines <rs>-Elements ausgezeichnet. Eine Spezifizierung findet hier mit dem *@type*-Attribut und dem Wert "statute" statt.

Im *@key*-Attribut wird die Id des Gesetzestextes aus dem entsprechenden Index referenziert.

<**text**>  
 <**body**>  
  <**div**>  
   <**p**> Die referenzierte Stelle, <**rs** **type**="statute"  
     **ref**="id des Gesetztestextes"> B-VG Art 1, Abs 15, Z 19</**rs**>,  
       existiert vermutlich nicht. </**p**>  
  </**div**>  
 </**body**>  
</**text**>

### Institutionen

Institutionen werden mittels des <rs>-Element und dem *@type*=institution als solche gekennzeichnet. Mittel des *@ref*-Attributs wird auf die Id der entsprechenden Person im Index verwiesen.

<**text**>  
 <**body**>  
  <**div**>  
   <**p**>Der <**rs** **ref**="#i123" **type**="instituion">Gerichtshof</**rs**> untersteht  
       dem <**rs** **ref**="#i123" **type**="institution">Wirtschaftsministerium</**rs**>.</**p**>  
  </**div**>  
 </**body**>  
</**text**>

### Personen

Personennamen und inderekte Nennungen von Personen werden mittels de <rs>-Element und dem *@type*=person als solche gekennzeichnet. Dabei wird nicht zwischen Vor- und Nachname, Titel o.ä. unterschieden. Mittel des *@ref*-Attributs wird auf die Id der entsprechenden Person im Index verwiesen.

<**text**>  
 <**body**>  
  <**div**>  
   <**p**>Die oben genannte <**rs** **ref**="#p123" **type**="person">Person</**rs**>  
       verweist auf <**rs** **ref**="#g123" **type**="person">Kelsen</**rs**>.</**p**>  
  </**div**>  
 </**body**>  
</**text**>

### Begriffserleuterungen/Abkürzungen

Erläuterungsbedürftige Begriffe und Abkürzungen werden mittels eines <rs>-Elements mit dem *@type*=term als solche gekennzeichnet. Mittels der *@ref*-Attributs wird auf die Id der entsprechenden Ansetzung im Index verwiesen.

<**text**>  
 <**body**>  
  <**div**>  
   <**p**>irgendein Text <**rs** **type**="term" **key**="bv\_term\_123">B-VG</**rs**> weiterer  
       Text</**p**>  
  </**div**>  
 </**body**>  
</**text**>

## Texteingriffe/Konjekturen

Editorische Eingriffe in den Text werden mit dem Element <corr> markiert. Das gilt nicht bei offensichtlichen, geringfügigen Fehlen wie Buchstabendrehern. Diese werden stillschweigend emendiert.

Bei schwererwiegenderen Eingriffen ist es notwendig, den ursrprünglichen Text des Dokuments zu dokumentieren. In solchen Fällen, wird das <corr>-Element verwendet, das den korrigierten Text zu taggen, auf das ein <sic>-Element folgt, das wiederum den Originaltext dokumentiert.

<**body**>  
 <**div**>  
  <**p**>Es ist in dieser Situatuion notwendig den Bundestag zu  
  <**corr**>vertagen</**corr**>  
   <**sic**>befragen</**sic**>  
  </**p**>  
 </**div**>  
</**body**>

## Textgenetische/Textkritische Anmerkungen

Ziel der editorischen Arbeit ist es, den lesbaren Text der letzten Schicht des Dokuments zur Verfügung zu stellen. Neben dieser Herstellung des lesbaren Textes gilt es jedoch auch Momente ihre Entstehung zu dokumentieren. Solche Phänomene können unterteil werden in:

* Bearbeitungschritte, die die Textgestalt direkt verändern (Streichungen, Einfügungen, Ersetzungen)
* Bearbeitungschritte, die den bestehenden Text metasprachlich kommentieren (Anmerkungen am Rand, etc.)

Während im ersten Fall das Resultat der Bearbeitung in den Haupttext einfließt und der der Bearbeitung vorausliegende Zustand in einem Kommentar festgehalten wird, wird im zweiten Falle das Resultat – die Anmerkung – nur im Kommentar festgehalten.

Ein solcher Kommentar der Editor:innen besteht in beiden Fällen aus einem <note>-Element das den Inhalt des editorischen/textgenetischen Kommentars enthält (durch den *@type*editor markiert). Um den Referenzbereich des Kommentars im kommentierten Text – also seine betreffende ›Stelle‹ – zu markieren wird ein zusätzliches Anchor-Element verwendet: Das <anchor>-Element mit dem *@type*=editor markiert stets den **Beginn** der Stelle, das <note>-Element, das den Kommentar-Text enhält, ihr Ende. Um diese Relation eindeutig zu kodieren, erhalten beide Elemente – über das Framework automatisiert – eine Id. Die des <anchor>-Elements wird mit den Suffix ›\_s‹ (für ›start‹) die des <note>-Elements mit dem Suffix ›\_e‹ (für ›end‹) versehen.

Kommentare im Dokument selbst, wie sie im zweiten Fall auftreten, werden zusätlich von einem <note>-Element umschlossen, dass ein *@type*-Attribut mit dem Wert original erhält. Im ersten Fall wird gestrichener oder überschriebener Text von einem <del>-Element umschlossen, während hinzugefügter oder überschreibender Text durch ein <add>-Element umschlossen wird.

<**body**>  
 <**div**>  
  <**p**>Die Republik Deutschösterreich ist ein freier Bund <**anchor** **type**="editor" **xml:id**="a\_1222\_s"/> der souveränen Länder <**note** **type**="editor" **xml:id**="a\_1222\_e">  
    <**rs** **type**="person" **ref**="p\_0001">Kelsen</**rs**> am Rand: <**note** **type**="original">Artikel?</**note**>; aus: <**del**>souveräner Länder</**del**>  
   </**note**> ; Sie besteht aus neun selbstständigen Bundesländern. </**p**>  
  <**p**>Es ist unter diesen <**anchor** **type**="editor" **xml:id**="e\_1236\_s"/>Umständen  
     jedoch <**anchor** **type**="editor" **xml:id**="e\_1235\_s"/>weder ratsam noch nötig,  
  <**note** **type**="editor" **xml:id**="e\_1235\_e">  
    <**rs** **type**="person" **ref**="p\_0001">Falser</**rs**> am Rand (mit Anstreichung):  
   <**note** **type**="original">möglich?</**note**>  
   </**note**> die Bundesversammlung einzuberufen. <**note** **type**="editor" **xml:id**="e\_1236\_e">  
    <**persName** **key**="p\_0001">Kelsen</**persName**> aus: <**del**>Bedingungen nicht  
         verpflichtend, die Bundesversammlung zu Rate zu ziehen.</**del**>  
   </**note**>  
  </**p**>  
 </**div**>  
</**body**>

## Indizes/Ids

Um effektiv mit Xml zu arbeiten und Datenkonsitenz zu gewährleisten, ist es nötig, zum Zwecke der Referenzierung auf Ids zurückzugreifen. Solches Ids können auf verwendet werden, um verschiedenste Entitäten zu referenzieren. Grob lassen sich zwei verschiedene Klassen von Referenzen ausmachen.

### Xml-interne Referenzen

Innerhalb der Xml-Dateien, kann ein Xml-Element auf ein anderes, mit einer Id versehenes Element verweisen. So verweist beispielsweise das <app>-Element mittels des Wertes von *@from* auf das <anchor>-Element, das den Anfang der Stelle markiert. Das ist möglich, weil das <anchor>-Element über eine Id verfügt, die in seinem *@xml:id*-Attribut zu finden ist. Solche Ids, die innerhalb eines Xml-Dokuments deklariert werden, sollten **ausschließlich über die im Framework zur Verfügung gestellten Funktionen generiert werden**, da das Zuweisen der gleichen Id an zwei verschiedene Elemente innerhalb eines Dokumentes invalides Xml erzeugt.

### Referenzen auf externe Quelllen

Innerhalb der Xml-Dateien, kann auf Entitäten verwiesen werden, deren Index-Ansetzungen nicht in Xml-Dateien gespeichert sind. Wir verwenden zwei Datenbanken für das Erfassen und Speichern von Daten:

* **Baserow**, eine Excell ähnliche Datenbank, wird verwendet, um Personen, Gesetze, Institutionen und die Dokumente der Edition selbst zu indizieren. Die Verwaltung und Erzeugung von Ids verläuft dort, wenn ein neuer Eintrag angelegt wird, automatisiert. Fehlende Entitäten müssen währen der manuellen Bearbeitung des Xml von den Bearbeiter:innen stetig ergänzt werden. Die automatisch generierte Id befindet sich stets im Feld „bv\_id“
* **Zotero**, eine komplexe bibliographische Datenbank, wird verwendet, um Quellen der Sekundärliteatur zu verwalten.

Das auffinden der korrekten Id für eine Referenz auf einen der durch die Datenbanken repräsentierten Indizes ist über das Framwork integriert, was in den meisten Fällen das konsultieren der Datenbank überflüssig machen sollte.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Dokumente der Edition** | Die Ids der edierten Dokumente befinden sich in der entsprechenden [Baserow-Datenbank](https://baserow.acdh-dev.oeaw.ac.at/database/421/table/2289) und im allerersten Element (<TEI>) der Xml-Datei, die dem Dokument entspricht. |
| **alle div** | Die Id befindet sich im *@xml:id* des Elements. Sie wird automatisch über das Framework generiert. |
| **Seitenwechsel im Original <pb>** | Die Id befindet sich im *@xml:id* des Elements. Sie wird automatisch in der Xml-Datei zur Verfügung gestellt. |
| **Absätze/Paragraphen** | Die Id befindet sich im *@xml:id* des Elements. Sie wird automatisch über das Framework generiert. |
| **<anchor> zur Markierung/Referenzierung von Stellen** | Die Id befindet sich im *@xml:id* des Elements. Sie wird automatisch über das Framework generiert. |
| **Personen** | Die Ids der Personen befinden sich in der entsprechenden [Baserow-Datenbank](https://baserow.acdh-dev.oeaw.ac.at/database/421/table/2290). Das Framework integriert eine Funtkion, die das Konsultieren der Datenbank in den meisten Fällen überflüssig macht. |
| **Gesetze** | Die Ids der Gesetze befinden sich in der entsprechenden [Baserow-Datenbank](https://baserow.acdh-dev.oeaw.ac.at/database/421/table/2588). Das Framework integriert eine Funtkion, die das Konsultieren der Datenbank in den meisten Fällen überflüssig macht. |
| **Sachbegriffe** | Die Ids Sachbegriffe befinden sich in der entsprechenden [Baserow-Datenbank](https://baserow.acdh-dev.oeaw.ac.at/database/421/table/2589).Das Framework integriert eine Funtkion, die das Konsultieren der Datenbank in den meisten Fällen überflüssig macht. |
| **Literaturangaben** | Die Ids von Literaturangaben stammen aus der Zotero-Datenbank. Das Framework integriert eine Funtkion, die das Konsultieren der Datenbank in den meisten Fällen überflüssig macht. |

# Appendix

## Elements

### <TEI>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<TEI>** (TEI-Dokument) enthält ein einzelnes TEI-konformes Dokument, das aus einem einzigen TEI-Header und einem oder mehreren Mitgliedern der model.resource-Klasse besteht. Mehrere <TEI>-Elemente können in einem <teiCorpus>-Element zusammengefasst werden. [[4. Default Text Structure](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS) [15.1. Varieties of Composite Text](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **version** | gibt die Versionsnummer der TEI-Richtlinien an, gegen die dieses Dokument validiert wird.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.version | | **Note** | Hauptausgaben der TEI-Richtlinien werden seit langem informell mit einem Namen bezeichnet, der sich aus dem Buchstaben P (für proposal) und einer Ziffer zusammensetzt. Die aktuelle Ausgabe ist eine der vielen Ausgaben der fünften Hauptausgabe der Richtlinien, bekannt als P5. Dieses Attribut kann dazu verwendet werden, um ein TEI-Dokument einer bestimmten Version der P5-Richtlinien zuzuordnen, sofern keine genauere Zuordnung durch das Attribut *@source* im assoziierten <schemaSpec>-Element angegeben ist. | | |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **header:** teiHeader  **textstructure:** TEI text  **transcr:** facsimile |
| **Note** | Dieses Element ist obligatorisch. Es ist notwendig, auch den TEI-Namensraum http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0 anzugeben, z.B. <TEI version="4.4.0" xml:lang="it" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">. |
| **Example** | <**TEI** **version**="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  <**teiHeader**>   <**fileDesc**>    <**titleStmt**>     <**title**>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</**title**>    </**titleStmt**>    <**publicationStmt**>     <**p**>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5          version using a namespace.</**p**>    </**publicationStmt**>    <**sourceDesc**>     <**p**>No source: this is an original work.</**p**>    </**sourceDesc**>   </**fileDesc**>  </**teiHeader**>  <**text**>   <**body**>    <**p**>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</**p**>   </**body**>  </**text**> </**TEI**> |
| **Example** | <**TEI** **version**="2.9.1" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  <**teiHeader**>   <**fileDesc**>    <**titleStmt**>     <**title**>A TEI Document containing four page images </**title**>    </**titleStmt**>    <**publicationStmt**>     <**p**>Unpublished demonstration file.</**p**>    </**publicationStmt**>    <**sourceDesc**>     <**p**>No source: this is an original work.</**p**>    </**sourceDesc**>   </**fileDesc**>  </**teiHeader**>  <**facsimile**>   <**graphic** **url**="page1.png"/>   <**graphic** **url**="page2.png"/>   <**graphic** **url**="page3.png"/>   <**graphic** **url**="page4.png"/>  </**facsimile**> </**TEI**> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:ns prefix="tei"  uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/> <sch:ns prefix="xs"  uri="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"/> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:ns prefix="rng"  uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>   <alternate>    <sequence>     <classRef key="model.resource"      minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>     <elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="0"      maxOccurs="unbounded"/>    </sequence>    <elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element TEI {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.typed.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.typed),  attribute version { text }?,  (  [undefinedteiHeader](#TEI.undefinedteiHeader),  ( ( [undefinedmodel.resource](#TEI.undefinedmodel.resource)+, [undefinedTEI](#TEI.undefinedTEI)\* ) | [undefinedTEI](#TEI.undefinedTEI)+ )  ) } |

### <abstract>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<abstract>** enthält eine (formale) Zusammenfassung, die einem bestehenden Quelldokument vorangestellt wird. [[2.4.4. Abstracts](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4ABS)] | |
| **Module** | header — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** list p  **figures:** table |
| **Note** | This element is intended only for cases where no abstract is available in the original source. Any abstract already present in the source document should be encoded as a <div> within the <front>, as it should for a born-digital document. |
| **Example** | <**profileDesc**>  <**abstract** **resp**="#LB">   <**p**>Good database design involves the acquisition and deployment of      skills which have a wider relevance to the educational process. From      a set of more or less instinctive rules of thumb a formal discipline      or "methodology" of database design has evolved. Applying that      methodology can be of great benefit to a very wide range of academic      subjects: it requires fundamental skills of abstraction and      generalisation and it provides a simple mechanism whereby complex      ideas and information structures can be represented and manipulated,      even without the use of a computer. </**p**>  </**abstract**> </**profileDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate minOccurs="1"   maxOccurs="unbounded">   <classRef key="model.pLike"/>   <classRef key="model.listLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element abstract {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  ( [undefinedmodel.pLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.pLike) | [undefinedmodel.listLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.listLike) )+ } |

### <address>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<address>** (Adresse) enthält eine Postadresse, z. B. eines Verlegers, einer Organisation oder einer Einzelperson. [[3.6.2. Addresses](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.addressLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** author bibl biblScope corr date head hi item note p pubPlace publisher resp rs street title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change creation funder licence principal publicationStmt  **msdescription:** institution origin repository  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement |
| **May contain** | **core:** lb note pb postCode rs street  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement |
| **Note** | Dieses Element sollte ausschließlich für postalische Addressen verwendet werden. Innerhalb des Elements kann das generische <addrLine>-Element als Alternative zu den spezielleren Elementen aus der model.addrPart-Klasse, wie <street> (Straße), <postCode> (Postleitzahl), etc. verwendet werden. |
| **Example** | Using just the elements defined by the core module, an address could be represented as follows:  <**address**>  <**street**>via Marsala 24</**street**>  <**postCode**>40126</**postCode**>  <**name**>Bologna</**name**>  <**name**>Italy</**name**> </**address**> |
| **Example** | When a schema includes the names and dates module more specific elements such as country or settlement would be preferable over generic <name>:  <**address**>  <**street**>via Marsala 24</**street**>  <**postCode**>40126</**postCode**>  <**settlement**>Bologna</**settlement**>  <**country**>Italy</**country**> </**address**> |
| **Example** | <**address**>  <**addrLine**>Computing Center, MC 135</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>P.O. Box 6998</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>Chicago, IL 60680</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>USA</**addrLine**> </**address**> |
| **Example** | <**address**>  <**country** **key**="FR"/>  <**settlement** **type**="city">Lyon</**settlement**>  <**postCode**>69002</**postCode**>  <**district** **type**="arrondissement">IIème</**district**>  <**district** **type**="quartier">Perrache</**district**>  <**street**>   <**num**>30</**num**>, Cours de Verdun</**street**> </**address**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.global"    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   <sequence minOccurs="1"    maxOccurs="unbounded">    <classRef key="model.addrPart"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element address {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  (  [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global)\*,  ( [undefinedmodel.addrPart](#TEI.undefinedmodel.addrPart), [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global)\* )+  ) } |

### <anchor>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<anchor>** (Ankerpunkt) Element bestimmt im Falle einer editorischen Anmerkung den Beginn der Stelle. [[8.4.2. Synchronization and Overlap](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSSAPA) [16.5. Correspondence and Alignment](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SACS)] | |
| **Module** | linking — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Legal values are:** | **editor** Beginn der Stelle | | | **xml:id** | |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | teidata.text | | |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address author bibl biblScope corr date head hi item list note p pubPlace publisher resp rs street title unclear  **figures:** cell table  **header:** change funder licence principal  **msdescription:** institution msItem origin repository  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  **textstructure:** body text  **transcr:** surface |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | In diesem Element muss das globale *@xml:id*-Attribut gesetzt werden, um eine Kennung für genau diese Stelle innerhalb des Dokuments angeben zu können. Der Wert kann frei gewählt werden, solange er innerhalb des Dokuments eindeutig ist und es sich um einen syntaktisch validen Namen handelt. Werden innerhalb des *@xml:id*-Attributs Zahlen verwendet, müssen die Werte nicht sequenziell verwendet werden. |
| **Example** | <**s**>The anchor is he<**anchor** **xml:id**="A234"/>re somewhere.</**s**> <**s**>Help me find it.<**ptr** **target**="#A234"/> </**s**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <empty/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element anchor {  attribute type { "editor" },  attribute xml:id { text },  empty } |

### <author>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<author>** (Autor) enthält in einer bibliografischen Referenz den oder die Namen eines Autors eines Werks (oder einer für das Werk verantwortlichen Körperschaft); zum Beispiel in der Form, wie sie eine anerkannte bibliografische Instanz anbietet. [[3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt  **msdescription:** msItem |
| **May contain** | **core:** address corr date graphic hi lb note pb rs title unclear  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Note** | Insbesondere wenn eine Katalogisierung auf Basis des TEI-Headers erfolgen soll, ist es ratsam einen Namen aus einer annerkannten Normdatei zu verwenden. Die Attribute *@key* und *@ref* können außerdem benutzt werden, um auf kanonische Informationen über einen Autor zu verweisen, etwa in einem Bibliothekskatalog oder einer Online-Ressource.  Im Fall von Rundfunksendungen sollte dies Element benutzt werden, um den Namen der Firma oder der Sendergruppe zu notieren, welche diese Rundfunksendung verantwortet.  Wo ein Autor unbekannt oder nicht angegeben ist, kann dieses Element Text wie z. B. Unbekannt oder Nicht angegeben beinhalten. Wenn die entsprechenden TEI-Module benutzt werden, kann das Element auch detaillierte Auszeichnungen für Namen von Personen, Organisationen oder Orten beinhalten - insbesondere wenn mehrere Namen vorhanden sind. |
| **Example** | <**author**>British Broadcasting Corporation</**author**> <**author**>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de (1634–1693)</**author**> <**author**>Anonymous</**author**> <**author**>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</**author**> <**author**>  <**persName**>Beaumont, Francis</**persName**> and <**persName**>John Fletcher</**persName**> </**author**> <**author**>  <**orgName** **key**="BBC">British Broadcasting    Corporation</**orgName**>: Radio 3 Network </**author**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element author {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.naming.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.naming),  [undefinedatt.datable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.datable),  [undefinedmacro.phraseSeq](#TEI.undefinedmacro.phraseSeq)} |

### <availability>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<availability>** (Verfügbarkeit) Dokument auf dem der Inhalt der Datei basiert. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | header — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **status** | (Statuscode) gibt einen Code an, der die derzeitige Nutzbarkeit eines Textes festlegt.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **free** (frei) der Text ist frei verfügbar.  **unknown** (unbekannt) der Status des Textes ist unbekannt.  **restricted** (eingeschränkt) der Text ist nicht frei verfügbar. | | |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** publicationStmt |
| **May contain** | **header:** licence |
| **Note** | Es sollte ein einheitliches Format verwendet werden. |
| **Example** | <**availability** **status**="restricted">  <**p**>Available for academic research purposes only.</**p**> </**availability**> <**availability** **status**="free">  <**p**>In the public domain</**p**> </**availability**> <**availability** **status**="restricted">  <**p**>Available under licence from the publishers.</**p**> </**availability**> |
| **Example** | <**availability**>  <**licence** **target**="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT">   <**p**>The MIT License      applies to this document.</**p**>   <**p**>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</**p**>   <**p**>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy      of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal      in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights      to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell      copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is      furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:</**p**>   <**p**>The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in      all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</**p**>   <**p**>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR      IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY,      FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE      AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER      LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM,      OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN      THE SOFTWARE.</**p**>  </**licence**> </**availability**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <elementRef key="licence"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element availability {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.declarable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.declarable),  attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,  [undefinedlicence](#TEI.undefinedlicence)} |

### <bibl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<bibl>** (bibliografische Angabe) enthält eine lose strukturierte bibliografische Angabe, in der einzelne Komponenten explizit ausgezeichnet sein können. [[3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBITY) [2.2.7. The Source Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status) |
| **Member of** | model.biblLike model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl corr head hi item note p title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change licence  **msdescription:** msItem origin  **textstructure:** body |
| **May contain** | **core:** address author bibl biblScope corr date hi lb note pb pubPlace publisher respStmt rs title unclear  **header:** availability funder idno principal  **linking:** anchor  **msdescription:** msIdentifier  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Note** | Enthält Phrasen-Level-Elemente, zusammen mit einer beliebigen Kombination von Elementen der model.biblPart-Klasse |
| **Example** | <**bibl**>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale,  1990)</**bibl**> |
| **Example** | <**bibl**>  <**title** **level**="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</**title**>. In <**author**>Victor E Neuberg</**author**>, <**title**>The Penny Histories</**title**>. <**publisher**>OUP</**publisher**>  <**date**>1968</**date**>.  </**bibl**> |
| **Example** | <**bibl** **type**="article" **subtype**="book\_chapter"  **xml:id**="carlin\_2003">  <**author**>   <**name**>    <**surname**>Carlin</**surname**>      (<**forename**>Claire</**forename**>)</**name**>  </**author**>, <**title** **level**="a">The Staging of Impotence : France’s last    congrès</**title**> dans <**bibl** **type**="monogr">   <**title** **level**="m">Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W.      Tobin</**title**>, éd.  <**editor**>    <**name**>     <**forename**>Claire</**forename**>     <**surname**>Carlin</**surname**>    </**name**>   </**editor**> et  <**editor**>    <**name**>     <**forename**>Kathleen</**forename**>     <**surname**>Wine</**surname**>    </**name**>   </**editor**>,  <**pubPlace**>Charlottesville, Va.</**pubPlace**>,  <**publisher**>Rookwood Press</**publisher**>,  <**date** **when**="2003">2003</**date**>.  </**bibl**> </**bibl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate minOccurs="0"   maxOccurs="unbounded">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.highlighted"/>   <classRef key="model.pPart.data"/>   <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>   <classRef key="model.segLike"/>   <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>   <classRef key="model.biblPart"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element bibl {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.declarable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.declarable),  [undefinedatt.typed.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.typed),  [undefinedatt.sortable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.sortable),  [undefinedatt.docStatus.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.docStatus),  (  text  | [undefinedmodel.gLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.gLike) | [undefinedmodel.highlighted](#TEI.undefinedmodel.highlighted) | [undefinedmodel.pPart.data](#TEI.undefinedmodel.pPart.data) | [undefinedmodel.pPart.edit](#TEI.undefinedmodel.pPart.edit) | [undefinedmodel.segLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.segLike) | [undefinedmodel.ptrLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.ptrLike) | [undefinedmodel.biblPart](#TEI.undefinedmodel.biblPart) | [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global) )\* } |

### <biblScope>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<biblScope>** (Geltungsbereich einer bibliografischen Referenz) grenzt den Geltungsbereich einer bibliografischen Referenz ein, zum Beispiel in Form von Seitenangaben oder benannten Unterabschnitten eines umfangreicheren Werks. [[3.12.2.5. Scopes and Ranges in Bibliographic Citations](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOB)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.citing (@unit, @from, @to) |
| **Member of** | model.imprintPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl |
| **May contain** | **core:** address corr date graphic hi lb note pb rs title unclear  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Note** | Wird nur eine einzelne Seite zitiert, erhalten die Attribute *@from* und *@to* identische Werte. Gibt es keinen klaren Endpunkt, sollte nur das *@from*-Attribut ohne korrespondierendes *@to*-Attribut verwendet werden, zum Beispiel könnte ein Zitat wie ‘S. 3ff.’ als <biblScope from="3">p. 3ff</biblScope> kodiert werden.  Es wird nun als gute Praxis angesehen, dieses Element als Geschwisterelement (anstatt eines Kindelements) von <imprint> anzugeben, da es Informationen enthält, die nicht Teil des Impressums sind. |
| **Example** | <**biblScope**>pp 12–34</**biblScope**> <**biblScope** **unit**="page" **from**="12" **to**="34"/> <**biblScope** **unit**="volume">II</**biblScope**> <**biblScope** **unit**="page">12</**biblScope**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element biblScope {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.citing.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.citing),  [undefinedmacro.phraseSeq](#TEI.undefinedmacro.phraseSeq)} |

### <body>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<body>** (Textkörper) enthält den gesamten Textkörper eines eigenständigen Textes, außer den Vorspann (front) und Nachspann (back). [[4. Default Text Structure](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure — Appendix |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** text |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl head lb list note p pb  **figures:** table  **linking:** anchor  **msdescription:** msDesc  **textstructure:** div |
| **Example** | <**body**>  <**l**>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</**l**>  <**l**>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</**l**>  <**l**>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes</**l**>  <**l**>eci dryctin or astelidæ</**l**>  <**l**>he aerist scop aelda barnum</**l**>  <**l**>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</**l**>  <**l**>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</**l**>  <**l**>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</**l**>  <**l**>firum foldu frea allmectig</**l**>  <**trailer**>primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.</**trailer**> </**body**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">   <classRef key="model.global"    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>    <alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded">     <classRef key="model.global"/>     <classRef key="model.divTop"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>   <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>    <alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded">     <classRef key="model.global"/>     <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>   <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">    <sequence minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded">     <classRef key="model.divLike"/>     <alternate minOccurs="0"      maxOccurs="unbounded">      <classRef key="model.global"/>      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <sequence minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded">     <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>     <alternate minOccurs="0"      maxOccurs="unbounded">      <classRef key="model.global"/>      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">     <sequence minOccurs="1"      maxOccurs="unbounded">      <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">       <elementRef key="schemaSpec"/>       <classRef key="model.common"/>      </alternate>      <classRef key="model.global"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>     </sequence>     <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">      <sequence minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded">       <classRef key="model.divLike"/>       <alternate minOccurs="0"        maxOccurs="unbounded">        <classRef key="model.global"/>        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>       </alternate>      </sequence>      <sequence minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded">       <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>       <alternate minOccurs="0"        maxOccurs="unbounded">        <classRef key="model.global"/>        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>       </alternate>      </sequence>     </alternate>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <sequence minOccurs="0"    maxOccurs="unbounded">    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element body {  [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global)\*,  (  [undefinedmodel.divTop](#TEI.undefinedmodel.divTop),  ( [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global) | [undefinedmodel.divTop](#TEI.undefinedmodel.divTop) )\*  )?,  (  [undefinedmodel.divGenLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.divGenLike),  ( [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global) | [undefinedmodel.divGenLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.divGenLike) )\*  )?,  (  (  [undefinedmodel.divLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.divLike),  ( [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global) | [undefinedmodel.divGenLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.divGenLike) )\*  )+  | (  [undefinedmodel.div1Like](#TEI.undefinedmodel.div1Like),  ( [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global) | [undefinedmodel.divGenLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.divGenLike) )\*  )+  | (  ( ( [schemaSpec](#TEI.schemaSpec) | [undefinedmodel.common](#TEI.undefinedmodel.common) ), [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global)\* )+,  (  (  [undefinedmodel.divLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.divLike),  ( [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global) | [undefinedmodel.divGenLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.divGenLike) )\*  )+  | (  [undefinedmodel.div1Like](#TEI.undefinedmodel.div1Like),  ( [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global) | [undefinedmodel.divGenLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.divGenLike) )\*  )+  )?  )  ),  ( [undefinedmodel.divBottom](#TEI.undefinedmodel.divBottom), [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global)\* )\* } |

### <cell>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<cell>** (Tabellenzelle) enthält eine Zelle einer Tabelle. [[14.1.1. TEI Tables](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FT.html#FTTAB1)] | |
| **Module** | figures — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.tableDecoration (@role, @rows, @cols) |
| **Contained by** | **figures:** row |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl corr date graphic hi lb list note p pb rs title unclear  **figures:** table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **msdescription:** msDesc  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Example** | <**row**>  <**cell** **role**="label">General conduct</**cell**>  <**cell** **role**="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality    and inattention to duties</**cell**> </**row**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element cell {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.tableDecoration.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.tableDecoration),  [undefinedmacro.specialPara](#TEI.undefinedmacro.specialPara)} |

### <change>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<change>** (Änderung) verzeichnet Änderungen oder Korrekturen während der Erstellung eines Basisdokuments oder während der Überarbeitung einer elektronischen Datei. [[2.6. The Revision Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6) [2.4.1. Creation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4C) [11.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PH-changes)] | |
| **Module** | header — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.ascribed (@who) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.docStatus (@status) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **target** | (Ziel) verweist auf ein oder mehrere Elemente, die zu dieser Änderung gehören.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** revisionDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl corr date graphic hi lb list note p pb rs title unclear  **figures:** table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **msdescription:** msDesc  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Note** | Das *@who*-Attribut kann dafür verwendet werden, um zu einem beliebigen anderen Element zu verweisen, sollte aber typischerweise auf ein <respStmt>- oder <person>-Element innerhalb des TEI-Headers zeigen, um die für die Änderungen Verantwortlichen und deren Rolle zu identifizieren.  Es wird empfohlen, Änderungen so aufzuzeichnen, dass die neuesten am Anfang eingetragen werden. Das *@status*-Attribut kann dafür verwendet werden, um den Zustand des Dokuments nach erfolgter Änderung zu beschreiben. |
| **Example** | <**titleStmt**>  <**title**> ... </**title**>  <**editor** **xml:id**="LDB">Lou Burnard</**editor**>  <**respStmt** **xml:id**="BZ">   <**resp**>copy editing</**resp**>   <**name**>Brett Zamir</**name**>  </**respStmt**> </**titleStmt**> <!-- ... --> <**revisionDesc** **status**="published">  <**change** **who**="#BZ" **when**="2008-02-02"   **status**="public">Finished chapter 23</**change**>  <**change** **who**="#BZ" **when**="2008-01-02"   **status**="draft">Finished chapter 2</**change**>  <**change** **n**="P2.2" **when**="1991-12-21"   **who**="#LDB">Added examples to section 3</**change**>  <**change** **when**="1991-11-11" **who**="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</**change**> </**revisionDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**profileDesc**>  <**creation**>   <**listChange**>    <**change** **xml:id**="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</**change**>    <**change** **xml:id**="DRAFT2"     **notBefore**="1880-12-09">First revision, mostly        using green ink</**change**>    <**change** **xml:id**="DRAFT3"     **notBefore**="1881-02-13">Final corrections as        supplied to printer.</**change**>   </**listChange**>  </**creation**> </**profileDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element change {  [undefinedatt.ascribed.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.ascribed),  [undefinedatt.datable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.datable),  [undefinedatt.docStatus.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.docStatus),  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.typed.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.typed),  attribute target { list { + } }?,  [undefinedmacro.specialPara](#TEI.undefinedmacro.specialPara)} |

### <corr>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<corr>** (Korrektur) enthält die korrekte Form einer offenbar fehlerhaften Textstelle in der Vorlage. [[3.5.1. Apparent Errors](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDCOR)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **core:** author bibl biblScope corr date head hi item note p pubPlace publisher rs street title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change licence  **msdescription:** origin  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl corr date graphic hi lb list note pb rs title unclear  **figures:** table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **msdescription:** msDesc  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Example** | Wenn es nur darum geht, darauf hinzuweisen, dass die Textvorlage korrigiert wurde, kann das <corr>-Element auch allein verwendet werden:  I don't know,  Juan. It's so far in the past now — how <**corr**>can we</**corr**> prove  or disprove anyone's theories? |
| **Example** | Es ist auch möglich, zusätzlich die Elemente <choice> und <sic> zu verwenden, um eine nicht korrigierte Lesart anzubieten:  I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now —  how <**choice**>  <**sic**>we can</**sic**>  <**corr**>can we</**corr**> </**choice**> prove or  disprove anyone's theories? |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element corr {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.editLike.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.editLike),  [undefinedatt.typed.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.typed),  [undefinedmacro.paraContent](#TEI.undefinedmacro.paraContent)} |

### <country>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<country>** (country) contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc. [[13.2.3. Place Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address author bibl biblScope corr date head hi item note p pubPlace publisher resp rs street title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change creation funder licence principal  **msdescription:** institution msIdentifier origin repository  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement |
| **May contain** | **core:** address corr date graphic hi lb note pb rs title unclear  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Note** | The recommended source for codes to represent coded country names is ISO 3166. |
| **Example** | <**country** **key**="DK">Denmark</**country**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element country {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.naming.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.naming),  [undefinedatt.typed.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.typed),  [undefinedatt.datable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.datable),  [undefinedmacro.phraseSeq](#TEI.undefinedmacro.phraseSeq)} |

### <creation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<creation>** (Entstehung) beinhaltet Informationen zur Entstehung eines Textes. [[2.4.1. Creation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4C) [2.4. The Profile Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4)] | |
| **Module** | header — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date hi rs title  **header:** idno  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Note** | Das <creation>-Element kann dafür verwendet werden, Einzelheiten über die Entstehung eines Textes, z. B. Entstehungszeit und Entstehungsort, zu dokumentieren, wenn diese von Interesse sind.  Es kann auch eine mehr oder weniger strukturierte Entstehungsgeschichte mit den einzelnen Bearbeitungs- und Revisionstufen enthalten; diese sollten mithilfe des <listChange>-Elements ausgezeichnet werden. Das <creation>-Element darf aber nicht mit dem <publicationStmt>-Element, das Zeit und Ort der Veröffentlichung verzeichnet, verwechselt werden. |
| **Example** | <**creation**>  <**date**>Before 1987</**date**> </**creation**> |
| **Example** | <**creation**>  <**date** **when**="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</**date**> </**creation**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate minOccurs="0"   maxOccurs="unbounded">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>   <elementRef key="listChange"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element creation {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.datable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.datable),  ( text | [undefinedmodel.limitedPhrase](#TEI.undefinedmodel.limitedPhrase) | [listChange](#TEI.listChange) )\* } |

### <date>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<date>** (Datum) enthält ein Datum in beliebigem Format. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) [2.6. The Revision Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6) [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI) [15.2.3. The Setting Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHSE) [13.4. Dates](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (n, xml:lang, xml:base, xml:space, @xml:id)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **when** | supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.datable.w3c | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.w3c | | | **notBefore-iso** | specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.datable.iso | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.iso | | | **notAfter-iso** | specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.datable.iso | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.iso | | |
| **Member of** | model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** author bibl biblScope corr date head hi item note p pubPlace publisher resp rs street title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change creation funder licence principal publicationStmt  **msdescription:** institution origin repository  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement |
| **May contain** | **core:** address corr date graphic hi lb note pb rs title unclear  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Example** | <**date** **when**="1980-02">early February 1980</**date**> |
| **Example** | Given on the <**date** **when**="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day  of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic  the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **when**="1990-09">September 1990</**date**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate minOccurs="0"   maxOccurs="unbounded">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element date {  [undefinedatt.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  attribute when { text }?,  attribute notBefore-iso { text }?,  attribute notAfter-iso { text }?,  (  text  | [undefinedmodel.gLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.gLike) | [undefinedmodel.phrase](#TEI.undefinedmodel.phrase) | [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global) )\* } |

### <div>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<div>** (Textabschnitt) enthält textuelle Einheiten [[4.1. Divisions of the Body](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDIV)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.declaring (@decls) att.written (@hand) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Legal values are:** | **article** Artikel eines Gesetzes  **section** erste Strukturebene eines Haupttextes (Hauptkapitel)  **main** einziges direktes child von body | | |
| **Member of** | model.divLike |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** body div |
| **May contain** | **core:** head list p pb  **textstructure:** div |
| **Example** | <**body**>  <**div** **type**="part">   <**head**>Fallacies of Authority</**head**>   <**p**>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object, to repress all      exercise of the reasoning faculty.</**p**>   <**div** **n**="1" **type**="chapter">    <**head**>The Nature of Authority</**head**>    <**p**>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the greatest        happiness of the greatest number [...]</**p**>    <**div** **n**="1.1" **type**="section">     <**head**>Analysis of Authority</**head**>     <**p**>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to be attached to          authority [...] </**p**>    </**div**>    <**div** **n**="1.2" **type**="section">     <**head**>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</**head**>     <**p**>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when [...] </**p**>    </**div**>   </**div**>  </**div**> </**body**> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:l or ancestor::tei:lg) and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, unless div is a descendant of floatingText. </sch:report> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)"> Abstract model violation: p and ab may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, unless div is a descendant of floatingText. </sch:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate minOccurs="0"   maxOccurs="unbounded">   <elementRef maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0" key="p"/>   <elementRef maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0" key="list"/>   <elementRef maxOccurs="3" minOccurs="0"    key="head"/>   <elementRef maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0" key="div"/>   <elementRef maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0" key="pb"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element div {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.divLike.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.divLike),  [undefinedatt.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.undefinedatt.typed),  [undefinedatt.declaring.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.declaring),  [undefinedatt.written.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.written),  attribute type { "article" | "section" | "main" },  (  [undefinedp](#TEI.undefinedp)\*  | [undefinedlist](#TEI.undefinedlist)\*  | (  [undefinedhead](#TEI.undefinedhead)?,  ( [undefinedhead](#TEI.undefinedhead), ( [undefinedhead](#TEI.undefinedhead), [undefinedhead](#TEI.undefinedhead)? )? )?  )  | [undefineddiv](#TEI.undefineddiv)\*  | [undefinedpb](#TEI.undefinedpb)\*  )\* } |

### <editionStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<editionStmt>** (Angaben zur Ausgabe) umfasst Angaben, die sich auf eine spezifische Ausgabe eines Textes beziehen. [[2.2.2. The Edition Statement](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22) [2.2. The File Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2)] | |
| **Module** | header — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** author p respStmt  **header:** funder principal |
| **Example** | <**editionStmt**>  <**edition** **n**="S2">Students' edition</**edition**>  <**respStmt**>   <**resp**>Adapted by </**resp**>   <**name**>Elizabeth Kirk</**name**>  </**respStmt**> </**editionStmt**> |
| **Example** | <**editionStmt**>  <**p**>First edition, <**date**>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</**date**>  </**p**> </**editionStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   <sequence>    <elementRef key="edition"/>    <classRef key="model.respLike"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   </sequence>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element editionStmt {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  ( [undefinedmodel.pLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.pLike)+ | ( [edition](#TEI.edition), [undefinedmodel.respLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.respLike)\* ) ) } |

### <encodingDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<encodingDesc>** (Beschreibung der Kodierung) dokumentiert das Verhältnis zwischen dem elektronischen Text und seiner Quelle oder den Quellen, von denen er sich ableitet. [[2.3. The Encoding Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5) [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11)] | |
| **Module** | header — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.teiHeaderPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **core:** p |
| **Example** | <**encodingDesc**>  <**p**>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All    hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No    formatting or layout information preserved.</**p**> </**encodingDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate minOccurs="1"   maxOccurs="unbounded">   <classRef key="model.encodingDescPart"/>   <classRef key="model.pLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element encodingDesc {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  ( [undefinedmodel.encodingDescPart](#TEI.undefinedmodel.encodingDescPart) | [undefinedmodel.pLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.pLike) )+ } |

### <facsimile>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<facsimile>** contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text. [[11.1. Digital Facsimiles](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHFAX)] | |
| **Module** | transcr — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) |
| **Member of** | model.resource |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **core:** graphic  **transcr:** surface |
| **Example** | <**facsimile**>  <**graphic** **url**="page1.png"/>  <**surface**>   <**graphic** **url**="page2-highRes.png"/>   <**graphic** **url**="page2-lowRes.png"/>  </**surface**>  <**graphic** **url**="page3.png"/>  <**graphic** **url**="page4.png"/> </**facsimile**> |
| **Example** | <**facsimile**>  <**surface** **ulx**="0" **uly**="0" **lrx**="200" **lry**="300">   <**graphic** **url**="Bovelles-49r.png"/>  </**surface**> </**facsimile**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="front" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate minOccurs="1"    maxOccurs="unbounded">    <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>    <elementRef key="surface"/>    <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/>   </alternate>   <elementRef key="back" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element facsimile {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.declaring.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.declaring),  (  [front](#TEI.front)?,  ( [undefinedmodel.graphicLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.graphicLike) | [undefinedsurface](#TEI.undefinedsurface) | [surfaceGrp](#TEI.surfaceGrp) )+,  [back](#TEI.back)?  ) } |

### <fileDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<fileDesc>** (Dateibeschreibung) enthält die vollständige bibliografische Beschreibung einer elektronischen Datei. [[2.2. The File Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2) [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11)] | |
| **Module** | header — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **header:** editionStmt publicationStmt sourceDesc titleStmt |
| **Note** | Die wesentliche Informationsquelle für die Erstellung eines Katalogeintrags oder eines bibliografischen Zitats einer elektronischen Datei. Das Element liefert einen Titel und Angaben zu Verantwortlichkeiten zusammen mit Details zu Publikation und Distribution der Datei, sowie eine mögliche Zugehörigkeit zu einer Reihe. Außerdem kann es detaillierte bibliografische Anmerkungen für Sachverhalte, die an keiner anderen Stelle im TEI-Header behandelt werden können, enthalten. Es beinhaltet außerdem eine vollständige bibliografische Beschreibung der Quelle selbst bzw. der Quellen von welchen sich der elektronische Text ableitet. |
| **Example** | <**fileDesc**>  <**titleStmt**>   <**title**>The shortest possible TEI document</**title**>  </**titleStmt**>  <**publicationStmt**>   <**p**>Distributed as part of TEI P5</**p**>  </**publicationStmt**>  <**sourceDesc**>   <**p**>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</**p**>  </**sourceDesc**> </**fileDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <sequence>    <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>    <elementRef key="editionStmt"     minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>    <elementRef key="seriesStmt"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>    <elementRef key="notesStmt"     minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>   <elementRef key="sourceDesc"    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element fileDesc {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  (  (  [undefinedtitleStmt](#TEI.undefinedtitleStmt),  [undefinededitionStmt](#TEI.undefinededitionStmt)?,  [extent](#TEI.extent)?,  [undefinedpublicationStmt](#TEI.undefinedpublicationStmt),  [seriesStmt](#TEI.seriesStmt)\*,  [notesStmt](#TEI.notesStmt)?  ),  [undefinedsourceDesc](#TEI.undefinedsourceDesc)+  ) } |

### <funder>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<funder>** (Geldgeber) gibt den Namen einer Einzelperson, Institution oder Organisation an, die für die Finanzierung eines Projekts oder Textes verantwortlich ist. [[2.2.1. The Title Statement](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21)] | |
| **Module** | header — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt  **msdescription:** msItem |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date hi lb note pb rs title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Note** | Die Geldgeber finanzieren das Projekt. Sie sind zu unterscheiden von den Förderern (siehe <sponsor>-Element), die das Projekt intellektuell und mit fachlicher Autorität unterstützen. |
| **Example** | <**funder**>The National Endowment for the Humanities, an independent federal agency</**funder**> <**funder**>Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European Communities</**funder**> <**funder**>The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation</**funder**> <**funder**>The Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of Canada</**funder**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element funder {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.canonical.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.canonical),  [undefinedatt.datable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.datable),  [undefinedmacro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.undefinedmacro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

### <graphic>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<graphic>** (Abbildung) gibt den Ort einer Bildressource an, die entweder Teil eines Texts oder ein Abbild dessen ist. [[3.10. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COGR) [11.1. Digital Facsimiles](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHFAX)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.media (@width, @height, @scale) (att.internetMedia (@mimeType)) att.resourced (@url) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** author biblScope corr date head hi item note p pubPlace publisher rs street title unclear  **figures:** cell table  **header:** change licence  **msdescription:** msItem origin  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  **transcr:** facsimile surface |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | Das *@mimeType*-Attribut sollte genutzt werden, um den MIME Medientyp des über das *@url*-Attributs spezifizierten Bildes anzugeben. Innerhalb des Textkörpers gibt das <graphic>-Element das Vorkommen eines Bildes oder einer Illustration in der Textvorlage an. Innerhalb eines <sourceDoc>- oder <facsimile>-Elements dagegen gibt das <graphic>-Element eine zusätzliche Repräsentation (eines Teils) der Vorlage wieder. |
| **Example** | <**figure**>  <**graphic** **url**="fig1.png"/>  <**head**>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</**head**>  <**figDesc**>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a    series of buoys strung out between them.</**figDesc**> </**figure**> |
| **Example** | <**facsimile**>  <**surfaceGrp** **n**="leaf1">   <**surface**>    <**graphic** **url**="page1.png"/>   </**surface**>   <**surface**>    <**graphic** **url**="page2-highRes.png"/>    <**graphic** **url**="page2-lowRes.png"/>   </**surface**>  </**surfaceGrp**> </**facsimile**> |
| **Example** | <**facsimile**>  <**surfaceGrp** **n**="leaf1" **xml:id**="spi001">   <**surface** **xml:id**="spi001r">    <**graphic** **type**="normal"     **subtype**="thumbnail" **url**="spi/thumb/001r.jpg"/>    <**graphic** **type**="normal" **subtype**="low-res"     **url**="spi/normal/lowRes/001r.jpg"/>    <**graphic** **type**="normal"     **subtype**="high-res" **url**="spi/normal/highRes/001r.jpg"/>    <**graphic** **type**="high-contrast"     **subtype**="low-res" **url**="spi/contrast/lowRes/001r.jpg"/>    <**graphic** **type**="high-contrast"     **subtype**="high-res" **url**="spi/contrast/highRes/001r.jpg"/>   </**surface**>   <**surface** **xml:id**="spi001v">    <**graphic** **type**="normal"     **subtype**="thumbnail" **url**="spi/thumb/001v.jpg"/>    <**graphic** **type**="normal" **subtype**="low-res"     **url**="spi/normal/lowRes/001v.jpg"/>    <**graphic** **type**="normal"     **subtype**="high-res" **url**="spi/normal/highRes/001v.jpg"/>    <**graphic** **type**="high-contrast"     **subtype**="low-res" **url**="spi/contrast/lowRes/001v.jpg"/>    <**graphic** **type**="high-contrast"     **subtype**="high-res" **url**="spi/contrast/highRes/001v.jpg"/>    <**zone** **xml:id**="spi001v\_detail01">     <**graphic** **type**="normal"      **subtype**="thumbnail" **url**="spi/thumb/001v-detail01.jpg"/>     <**graphic** **type**="normal"      **subtype**="low-res"      **url**="spi/normal/lowRes/001v-detail01.jpg"/>     <**graphic** **type**="normal"      **subtype**="high-res"      **url**="spi/normal/highRes/001v-detail01.jpg"/>     <**graphic** **type**="high-contrast"      **subtype**="low-res"      **url**="spi/contrast/lowRes/001v-detail01.jpg"/>     <**graphic** **type**="high-contrast"      **subtype**="high-res"      **url**="spi/contrast/highRes/001v-detail01.jpg"/>    </**zone**>   </**surface**>  </**surfaceGrp**> </**facsimile**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.descLike"   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element graphic {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.media.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.media),  [undefinedatt.resourced.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.resourced),  [undefinedatt.declaring.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.declaring),  [undefinedatt.typed.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.typed),  [undefinedmodel.descLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.descLike)\* } |

### <handDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<handDesc>** (description of hands) contains a description of all the different hands used in a manuscript or other object. [[10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#msph2)] | |
| **Module** | msdescription — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **hands** | (hands) specifies the number of distinct hands identified within the manuscript   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.count | | |
| **Member of** | model.physDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** physDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p |
| **Example** | <**handDesc**>  <**handNote** **scope**="major">Written throughout in <**term**>angelicana formata</**term**>.</**handNote**> </**handDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**handDesc** **hands**="2">  <**p**>The manuscript is written in two contemporary hands, otherwise    unknown, but clearly those of practised scribes. Hand I writes    ff. 1r-22v and hand II ff. 23 and 24. Some scholars, notably    Verner Dahlerup and Hreinn Benediktsson, have argued for a third hand    on f. 24, but the evidence for this is insubstantial.</**p**> </**handDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   <sequence>    <elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="handNote" minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   </sequence>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element handDesc {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  attribute hands { text }?,  ( [undefinedmodel.pLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.pLike)+ | ( [summary](#TEI.summary)?, [handNote](#TEI.handNote)+ ) ) } |

### <head>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<head>** (Überschrift) enthält eine beliebige Art von Überschrift, z. B. eines Kapitels, einer Liste, eines Glossars oder einer Handschriftenbeschreibung. [[4.2.1. Headings and Trailers](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSHD)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.placement (@place) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.headLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** list  **figures:** table  **msdescription:** msDesc  **textstructure:** body div |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl corr date graphic hi lb list note pb rs title unclear  **figures:** table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **msdescription:** msDesc  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Note** | Das <head>-Element wird für Überschriften jeder Hierarchiestufe verwendet; Software, die zwischen Kapitelüberschriften, Abschnittsüberschriften und Listenbezeichnern unterscheidet, muss die entsprechende Zuordnung aus der Position des <head>-Elements in der Textstruktur ableiten. Ein <head>-Element, das als erstes Element einer Liste erscheint, ist der Listenbezeichner; ein <head>-Element, das am Beginn einer mit <div1> bezeichneten Struktur steht, ist die Überschrift dieses Kapitels oder Abschnitts. |
| **Example** | Die häufigste Verwendung von <head>-Elementen ist es, Überschriften von Abschnitten zu kennzeichnen. In älteren Schriften können die Überschriften oder Incipits länger sein, als es in modernen Werken üblich ist. Wenn ein Abschnitt eine explizite Endung und eine Überschrift hat, sollte die Endung mit dem <trailer>-Element markiert werden, wie in diesem Beispiel:  <**div1** **n**="I" **type**="book">  <**head**>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the ecclesiastical history of    Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</**head**>  <**div2** **type**="section">   <**head**>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</**head**>   <**p**>Proposing as I do ...</**p**>   <**p**>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four hundred and twelve      years passed.</**p**>   <**trailer**>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five hundred and ninety-six      years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint Martin.</**trailer**>  </**div2**> </**div1**> |
| **Example** | Das <head>-Element wird auch verwendet, um Überschriften anderer Einheiten zu markieren, wie z. B. Listen:  With a few exceptions, connectives are equally  useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition, argument. <**list** **rend**="bulleted">  <**head**>Connectives</**head**>  <**item**>above</**item**>  <**item**>accordingly</**item**>  <**item**>across from</**item**>  <**item**>adjacent to</**item**>  <**item**>again</**item**>  <**item**> <!-- ... -->  </**item**> </**list**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate minOccurs="0"   maxOccurs="unbounded">   <textNode/>   <elementRef key="lg"/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.inter"/>   <classRef key="model.lLike"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element head {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.typed.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.typed),  [undefinedatt.placement.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.placement),  [undefinedatt.written.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.written),  (  text  | [lg](#TEI.lg) | [undefinedmodel.gLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.gLike) | [undefinedmodel.phrase](#TEI.undefinedmodel.phrase) | [undefinedmodel.inter](#TEI.undefinedmodel.inter) | [undefinedmodel.lLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.lLike) | [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global) )\* } |

### <hi>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<hi>** (hervorgehoben) markiert ein Wort oder eine Textpassage, das/die sich grafisch vom umgebenden Text abhebt, ohne dass ein inhaltlicher Grund dafür angegeben wird. [[3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQHE) [3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQH)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **rend** | (rendition) Beschreibt, wie der entsprechende Textteil hervorgehoben ist.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.global.rendition | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | **Legal values are:** | **emphasis** Hervorhebung im Dokument (Majuskeln, Kapitälchen, Unterstreichungen, fette Type) | | |
| **Member of** | model.hiLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** author bibl biblScope corr date head hi item note p pubPlace publisher resp rs street title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change creation funder licence principal  **msdescription:** institution origin repository  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl corr date graphic hi lb list note pb rs title unclear  **figures:** table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **msdescription:** msDesc  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Example** | <**hi** **rend**="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</**hi**>  that the said <**hi** **rend**="italic">Walter Shandy</**hi**>, merchant,  in consideration of the said intended marriage ... |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element hi {  attribute rend { list { "emphasis"+ } }?,  [undefinedmacro.paraContent](#TEI.undefinedmacro.paraContent)} |

### <history>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<history>** (history) groups elements describing the full history of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object. [[10.8. History](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#mshy)] | |
| **Module** | msdescription — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **msdescription:** origin |
| **Example** | <**history**>  <**origin**>   <**p**>Written in Durham during the mid twelfth      century.</**p**>  </**origin**>  <**provenance**>   <**p**>Recorded in two medieval      catalogues of the books belonging to Durham Priory, made in 1391 and      1405.</**p**>  </**provenance**>  <**provenance**>   <**p**>Given to W. Olleyf by William Ebchester, Prior (1446-56)      and later belonged to Henry Dalton, Prior of Holy Island (Lindisfarne)      according to inscriptions on ff. 4v and 5.</**p**>  </**provenance**>  <**acquisition**>   <**p**>Presented to Trinity College in 1738 by      Thomas Gale and his son Roger.</**p**>  </**acquisition**> </**history**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   <sequence>    <elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="origin" minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="provenance"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>    <elementRef key="acquisition"     minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element history {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  (  [undefinedmodel.pLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.pLike)+  | ( [summary](#TEI.summary)?, [undefinedorigin](#TEI.undefinedorigin)?, [provenance](#TEI.provenance)\*, [acquisition](#TEI.acquisition)? )  ) } |

### <idno>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<idno>** (Identifikator) enthält einen frei wählbaren Identifikator, der ein beliebiges Objekt, z. B. eine bibliografische Einheit, eine Person, einen Titel, eine Organisation, in standardisierter Weise identifiziert. [[13.3.1. Basic Principles](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSbp) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26) [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI)] | |
| **Module** | header — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | bestimmt die Art des Identifikators (z. B. ISBN, Sozialversicherungsnummer, URI)   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Suggested values include:** | **ISBN** International Standard Book Number: a 13- or (if assigned prior to 2007) 10-digit identifying number assigned by the publishing industry to a published book or similar item, registered with the  [International ISBN Agency.](https://www.isbn-international.org)  **ISSN** International Standard Serial Number: an eight-digit number to uniquely identify a serial publication.  **DOI** Digital Object Identifier: a unique string of letters and numbers assigned to an electronic document.  **URI** Uniform Resource Identifier: a string of characters to uniquely identify a resource, following the syntax of [RFC 3986](https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/html/rfc3986).  **VIAF** A data number in the Virtual Internet Authority File assigned to link different names in catalogs around the world for the same entity.  **ESTC** English Short-Title Catalogue number: an identifying number assigned to a document in English printed in the British Isles or North America before 1801.  **OCLC** OCLC control number (record number) for the union catalog record in WorldCat, a union catalog for member libraries in the Online Computer Library Center global cooperative. | | |
| **Member of** | model.msItemPart model.nameLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address author bibl biblScope corr date head hi item note p pubPlace publisher resp rs street title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change creation funder idno licence principal publicationStmt  **msdescription:** institution msIdentifier msItem origin repository  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement |
| **May contain** | **header:** idno  character data |
| **Note** | <idno> sollte für Identifikatoren genutzt werden, die ein Objekt oder Konzept in einem formalen Katalogsystem wie z. B. einer Datenbank oder einem RDF store oder in einem verteilten System wie dem World Wide Web eindeutig identifizieren. Als Werte für *@type* von <idno> bieten sich z. B. die ISBN, die ISSN, ein DOI oder ein URI an. |
| **Example** | <**idno** **type**="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="ISSN">0143-3385</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="DOI">10.1000/123</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="URI">http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="URI">http://authority.nzetc.org/463/</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="Wing">C695</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="oldCat">  <**g** **ref**="#sym"/>345 </**idno**>  In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a <glyph> or <char> element referenced here as #sym. |
| **Example** | <**idno** **type**="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="ISSN">0143-3385</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="DOI">10.1000/123</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="URI">http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="URI">http://authority.nzetc.org/463/</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="Wing">C695</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="oldCat">  <**g** **ref**="#sym"/>345 </**idno**>  In letztgenanntem Fall enthält der Identifikator ein Nicht-Unicode-Zeichen, das an anderer Stelle mit Hilfe eines <glyph> oder <char>-Elements definiert ist und hier als #sym referenziert wird. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate minOccurs="0"   maxOccurs="unbounded">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <elementRef key="idno"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element idno {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.sortable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.sortable),  [undefinedatt.datable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.datable),  [undefinedatt.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.undefinedatt.typed),  attribute type  {  "ISBN" | "ISSN" | "DOI" | "URI" | "VIAF" | "ESTC" | "OCLC"  }?,  ( text | [undefinedmodel.gLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.gLike) | [undefinedidno](#TEI.undefinedidno) )\* } |

### <institution>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<institution>** (institution) contains the name of an organization such as a university or library, with which a manuscript or other object is identified, generally its holding institution. [[10.4. The Manuscript Identifier](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#msid)] | |
| **Module** | msdescription — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msIdentifier |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date hi lb note pb rs title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Example** | <**msIdentifier**>  <**settlement**>Oxford</**settlement**>  <**institution**>University of Oxford</**institution**>  <**repository**>Bodleian Library</**repository**>  <**idno**>MS. Bodley 406</**idno**> </**msIdentifier**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element institution {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.naming.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.naming),  [undefinedmacro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.undefinedmacro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

### <item>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<item>** (Listenpunkt) enthält einen Listenpunkt. [[3.8. Lists](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI) [2.6. The Revision Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** list |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl corr date graphic hi lb list note p pb rs title unclear  **figures:** table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **msdescription:** msDesc  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Note** | Kann einen einfachen Fließtext enthalten oder eine Sequenz von Chunks.  Welche Zeichenfolge auch immer für die Kennzeichnung eines Listenpunkts in der Vorlage benutzt wird, kann als Wert des globalen *@n*-Attributs verwendet werden, dabei muss die Nummerierung nicht notwendigerweise erfasst werden. In geordneten Listen ist das *@n*-Attribut des <item>-Elements per Definition synonym mit dem Gebrauch des <label>-Elements, um den Zähler des Listenpunkts zu erfassen. In Glossarlisten sollte der zu definierende Term im <label>-Element und nicht im *@n*-Attribut angegeben werden. |
| **Example** | <**list** **rend**="numbered">  <**head**>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</**head**>  <**item** **n**="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the Church revenues.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.6">The priest Cato.</**item**>  <**item**> ...</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element item {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.sortable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.sortable),  [undefinedmacro.specialPara](#TEI.undefinedmacro.specialPara)} |

### <lb>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<lb>** (Zeilenanfang) markiert den Anfang einer neuen typographischen Zeile in einer bestimmten Auflage oder Version eines Textes. [[3.11.3. Milestone Elements](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break) |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address author bibl biblScope corr date head hi item list note p pubPlace publisher resp rs street title unclear  **figures:** cell table  **header:** change funder licence principal  **msdescription:** institution msItem origin repository  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  **textstructure:** body text  **transcr:** surface |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | Es ist Konvention, dass <lb>-Elemente an der Stelle im Text stehen sollen, an der eine neue Zeile beginnt. Das *@n*-Attribut enhält gegebenenfalls die Nummer der Zeile oder einen ähnlichen Wert, der sich auf den Text bezieht, der bis zum nächsten <lb> folgt, typischerweise die Nummer einer Zeile auf einer Seite oder andere einschlägige Einheiten.  Das Element dient dazu, typographische oder paläographische Phänomene an der Stelle zu beschreiben, an der sie auf dem Schriftträger sichtbar sind; es sollte nicht für Struktureinheiten wie z. B. Verszeilen in Lyrik verwendet werden (wofür das Element <l> zur Verfügung steht), außer wenn derartige Struktureinheiten anders nicht markiert werden können.  Das *@type*-Attribut kann verwendet werden, den Zeilenwechsel näher zu beschreiben, wenn nicht die speziellen Attribute *@break* (Worttrennung), *@ed* oder *@edRef* (Textzeuge, in dem der Zeilenwechsel vorkommt) verwendet werden können. |
| **Example** | Dieses Beispiel zeigt typografische Zeilenumbrüche innerhalb von Verszeilen, so wie sie an verschiedenen Stellen in unterschiedlichen Ausgaben auftreten:  <**l**>Of Mans First Disobedience,<**lb** **ed**="1674"/> and<**lb** **ed**="1667"/> the Fruit</**l**> <**l**>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<**lb** **ed**="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</**l**> <**l**>Brought Death into the World,<**lb** **ed**="1667"/> and all<**lb** **ed**="1674"/> our woe,</**l**> |
| **Example** | Dieses Beispiel kodiert typografische Zeilenumbrüche, um das visuelle Erscheinungsbild einer Titelseite zu bewahren. Das *@break*-Attribut zeigt an, dass der Zeilenumbruch nicht (wie anderswo) den Anfang eines neuen Wortes markiert.  <**titlePart**>  <**lb**/>With Additions, ne-<**lb** **break**="no"/>ver before Printed. </**titlePart**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <empty/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element lb {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.typed.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.typed),  [undefinedatt.edition.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.edition),  [undefinedatt.spanning.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.spanning),  [undefinedatt.breaking.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.breaking),  empty } |

### <licence>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<licence>** beinhaltet für den Text gültige Lizenzinformationen oder andere rechtswirksame Vereinbarungen. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | header — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** availability |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl corr date graphic hi lb list note p pb rs title unclear  **figures:** table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **msdescription:** msDesc  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Note** | Das <licence>-Element soll für jede Lizenzvereinbarung, die sich auf den Text bezieht, angegeben werden. Das *@target*-Attribut kann verwendet werden, um auf eine vollständige Version der Lizenz zu referenzieren. Die Attribute *@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from* oder *@to* können in Kombination verwendet werden, um den Gültigkeitszeitraum der Lizenz anzugeben. |
| **Example** | <**licence** **target**="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-Help.html#licensing"> Licence: Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 New Zealand Licence </**licence**> |
| **Example** | <**availability**>  <**licence** **target**="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/"   **notBefore**="2013-01-01">   <**p**>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence      applies to this document.</**p**>   <**p**>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</**p**>  </**licence**> </**availability**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element licence {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.pointing.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.pointing),  [undefinedatt.datable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.datable),  [undefinedmacro.specialPara](#TEI.undefinedmacro.specialPara)} |

### <list>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<list>** (Liste) enthält eine Reihe von Listenpunkten, die als Liste organisiert sind. [[3.8. Lists](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | (Typ) beschreibt die Art der Listenpunkte.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Suggested values include:** | **gloss** (Gloss) jeder Listenpunkt erläutert einen Begriff oder ein Konzept, das von einem voranstehenden <label>-Element genannt wird.  **index** (Index) jeder Listenpunkt ist ein Registereintrag z. B. in einem alphabetisch geordneten Sachregister am Ende einer Druckausgabe.  **instructions** (Arbeitsschritt) jeder Listenpunkt ist ein Arbeitsschritt in einer Folge von Anweisungen, wie z. B. in einem Rezept.  **litany** (Litanei) jeder Listenpunkt ist Teil einer Reihenfolge von Gebeten, Bitten oder Anrufungen die üblicherweise in einem religiösen Ritual verwendet werden.  **syllogism** (logischer Schluss) jeder Listenpunkt ist Teil eines Arguments, das aus zwei oder mehr Prämissen und einem daraus gezogenen Schluss besteht. | | **Note** | In älteren Versionen dieser Richtlinien wurde empfohlen, mit dem Attribut *@type* am <list>-Element die Darstellung oder das Erscheinungsbild einer Liste zu kodieren (also ob sie z. B. nummeriert oder mit Symbolen versehen ist). Die aktuelle Empfehlung ist, dafür die Attribute *@rend* oder *@style* zu verwenden, während mit *@type* der Inhalt der Liste charakterisiert werden sollte.  Die formale Syntax der Elementdeklaration erlaubt es, Listen vom <list type="gloss"> ohne das Element <label> zu verwenden; das ist jedoch ein semantischer Fehler. | | |
| **Member of** | model.listLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** corr head hi item note p title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** abstract change licence revisionDesc  **msdescription:** origin  **textstructure:** body div |
| **May contain** | **core:** head item lb note pb  **linking:** anchor |
| **Note** | Die Liste kann mit einer Überschrift <head> beginnen. Sie kann auch aus Paaren von Labels und Beschreibungen bestehen, sodass dann für jeden Teil spezielle Überschriften (<headLabel>, <headItem>) verwendet werden können. |
| **Example** | Das folgende Beispiel behandelt die kurzen nummerierten Klauseln von angelsächsischen Rechtstexten als Listen von <item>-Elementen. Der Text stammt aus einer Verordnung von König Athelstan (924-939):  <**div1** **type**="section">  <**head**>Athelstan's Ordinance</**head**>  <**list** **rend**="numbered">   <**item** **n**="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who is caught with      the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of the goods is] over      eightpence.   <**list** **rend**="numbered">     <**item** **n**="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief with his          wergild — and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that account — or to          clear himself by an oath of that amount.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or to escape, he is          not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</**item**>     <**item** **n**="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40 days, and he may          then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand surety for him          that he will desist for ever.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild,          or to bring him back there.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild,          whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and everyone of those who          supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a fine.</**item**>    </**list**>   </**item**>   <**item** **n**="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these lordless men, from whom      no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to fetch back such a      person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.   <**list** **rend**="numbered">     <**item** **n**="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that appointed day,          he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him is to strike him          down as a thief.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him with his wergild          or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</**item**>    </**list**>   </**item**>   <**item** **n**="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses justice and upholds      his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the value of the goods and      120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he demands justice as      often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have done, if he had      refused him justice.   <**list** **rend**="numbered">     <**item** **n**="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his slave, and it becomes          known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his wergild on the first          occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all that he owns.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our reeves, who has been          an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to the same.</**item**>    </**list**>   </**item**>   <**item** **n**="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced concerning treachery to      a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot deny it or is      afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</**item**>  </**list**> </**div1**>  In diesem Beispiel wurden verschachtelte Listen verwendet. Die Auszeichnung spiegelt somit die Struktur der zweistufigen Nummerierung der Klauseln wider. Die Klauseln könnten auch als eine einstufige Liste mit unregelmäßiger Nummerierung behandelt werden. |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:list[@type='gloss']"> <sch:assert test="tei:label">The content of a "gloss" list should include a sequence of one or more pairs of a label element followed by an item element</sch:assert> </sch:rule> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate minOccurs="0"    maxOccurs="unbounded">    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>    <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   </alternate>   <alternate>    <sequence minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded">     <elementRef key="item"/>     <classRef key="model.global"      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>    </sequence>    <sequence>     <elementRef key="headLabel"      minOccurs="0"/>     <elementRef key="headItem"      minOccurs="0"/>     <sequence minOccurs="1"      maxOccurs="unbounded">      <elementRef key="label"/>      <classRef key="model.global"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>      <elementRef key="item"/>      <classRef key="model.global"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>     </sequence>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <sequence minOccurs="0"    maxOccurs="unbounded">    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element list {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.sortable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.sortable),  [undefinedatt.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.undefinedatt.typed),  attribute type  {  "gloss" | "index" | "instructions" | "litany" | "syllogism"  }?,  (  ( [undefinedmodel.divTop](#TEI.undefinedmodel.divTop) | [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global) | [desc](#TEI.desc)\* )\*,  (  ( [undefineditem](#TEI.undefineditem), [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global)\* )+  | (  [headLabel](#TEI.headLabel)?,  [headItem](#TEI.headItem)?,  (  [label](#TEI.label),  [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global)\*,  [undefineditem](#TEI.undefineditem),  [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global)\*  )+  )  ),  ( [undefinedmodel.divBottom](#TEI.undefinedmodel.divBottom), [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global)\* )\*  ) } |

### <msContents>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<msContents>** (manuscript contents) describes the intellectual content of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of structured manuscript items. [[10.6. Intellectual Content](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#msco)] | |
| **Module** | msdescription — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.msExcerpt (@defective) att.msClass (@class) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **msdescription:** msItem |
| **Note** | Unless it contains a simple prose description, this element should contain at least one of the elements <summary>, <msItem>, or <msItemStruct>. This constraint is not currently enforced by the schema. |
| **Example** | <**msContents** **class**="#sermons">  <**p**>A collection of Lollard sermons</**p**> </**msContents**> |
| **Example** | <**msContents**>  <**msItem** **n**="1">   <**locus**>fols. 5r-7v</**locus**>   <**title**>An ABC</**title**>   <**bibl**>    <**title**>IMEV</**title**>    <**biblScope**>239</**biblScope**>   </**bibl**>  </**msItem**>  <**msItem** **n**="2">   <**locus**>fols. 7v-8v</**locus**>   <**title** **xml:lang**="frm">Lenvoy de Chaucer a Scogan</**title**>   <**bibl**>    <**title**>IMEV</**title**>    <**biblScope**>3747</**biblScope**>   </**bibl**>  </**msItem**>  <**msItem** **n**="3">   <**locus**>fol. 8v</**locus**>   <**title**>Truth</**title**>   <**bibl**>    <**title**>IMEV</**title**>    <**biblScope**>809</**biblScope**>   </**bibl**>  </**msItem**>  <**msItem** **n**="4">   <**locus**>fols. 8v-10v</**locus**>   <**title**>Birds Praise of Love</**title**>   <**bibl**>    <**title**>IMEV</**title**>    <**biblScope**>1506</**biblScope**>   </**bibl**>  </**msItem**>  <**msItem** **n**="5">   <**locus**>fols. 10v-11v</**locus**>   <**title** **xml:lang**="la">De amico ad amicam</**title**>   <**title** **xml:lang**="la">Responcio</**title**>   <**bibl**>    <**title**>IMEV</**title**>    <**biblScope**>16 &amp; 19</**biblScope**>   </**bibl**>  </**msItem**>  <**msItem** **n**="6">   <**locus**>fols. 14r-126v</**locus**>   <**title**>Troilus and Criseyde</**title**>   <**note**>Bk. 1:71-Bk. 5:1701, with additional losses due to mutilation throughout</**note**>  </**msItem**> </**msContents**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   <sequence>    <elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="textLang" minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="titlePage"     minOccurs="0"/>    <alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded">     <elementRef key="msItem"/>     <elementRef key="msItemStruct"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element msContents {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.msExcerpt.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.msExcerpt),  [undefinedatt.msClass.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.msClass),  (  [undefinedmodel.pLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.pLike)+  | ( [summary](#TEI.summary)?, [textLang](#TEI.textLang)?, [titlePage](#TEI.titlePage)?, ( [undefinedmsItem](#TEI.undefinedmsItem) | [msItemStruct](#TEI.msItemStruct) )\* )  ) } |

### <msDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<msDesc>** (manuscript description) contains a description of a single identifiable manuscript or other text-bearing object such as an early printed book. [[10.1. Overview](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#msov)] | |
| **Module** | msdescription — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.docStatus (@status) |
| **Member of** | model.biblLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** corr head hi item note p title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change licence sourceDesc  **msdescription:** msItem origin  **textstructure:** body |
| **May contain** | **core:** head p  **msdescription:** history msContents msIdentifier physDesc |
| **Note** | Although the <msDesc> has primarily been designed with a view to encoding manuscript descriptions, it may also be used for other objects such as early printed books, fascicles, epigraphs, or any text-bearing objects that require substantial description. If an object is not text-bearing or the reasons for describing the object is not primarily the textual content, the more general <object> may be more suitable. |
| **Example** | <**msDesc**>  <**msIdentifier**>   <**settlement**>Oxford</**settlement**>   <**repository**>Bodleian Library</**repository**>   <**idno** **type**="Bod">MS Poet. Rawl. D. 169.</**idno**>  </**msIdentifier**>  <**msContents**>   <**msItem**>    <**author**>Geoffrey Chaucer</**author**>    <**title**>The Canterbury Tales</**title**>   </**msItem**>  </**msContents**>  <**physDesc**>   <**objectDesc**>    <**p**>A parchment codex of 136 folios, measuring approx        28 by 19 inches, and containing 24 quires.</**p**>    <**p**>The pages are margined and ruled throughout.</**p**>    <**p**>Four hands have been identified in the manuscript: the first 44        folios being written in two cursive anglicana scripts, while the        remainder is for the most part in a mixed secretary hand.</**p**>   </**objectDesc**>  </**physDesc**> </**msDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="msIdentifier"/>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>    <sequence>     <elementRef key="msContents"      minOccurs="0"/>     <elementRef key="physDesc"      minOccurs="0"/>     <elementRef key="history" minOccurs="0"/>     <elementRef key="additional"      minOccurs="0"/>     <alternate>      <elementRef key="msPart" minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/>      <elementRef key="msFrag" minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element msDesc {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.sortable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.sortable),  [undefinedatt.typed.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.typed),  [undefinedatt.declaring.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.declaring),  [undefinedatt.docStatus.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.docStatus),  (  [undefinedmsIdentifier](#TEI.undefinedmsIdentifier),  [undefinedmodel.headLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.headLike)\*,  (  [undefinedmodel.pLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.pLike)+  | (  [undefinedmsContents](#TEI.undefinedmsContents)?,  [undefinedphysDesc](#TEI.undefinedphysDesc)?,  [undefinedhistory](#TEI.undefinedhistory)?,  [additional](#TEI.additional)?,  ( [msPart](#TEI.msPart)\* | [msFrag](#TEI.msFrag)\* )  )  )  ) } |

### <msIdentifier>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<msIdentifier>** (manuscript identifier) contains the information required to identify the manuscript or similar object being described. [[10.4. The Manuscript Identifier](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#msid)] | |
| **Module** | msdescription — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **msdescription:** msDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** idno  **msdescription:** institution repository  **namesdates:** country placeName settlement |
| **Example** | <**msIdentifier**>  <**settlement**>San Marino</**settlement**>  <**repository**>Huntington Library</**repository**>  <**idno**>MS.El.26.C.9</**idno**> </**msIdentifier**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="not(parent::tei:msPart) and (local-name(\*[1])='idno' or local-name(\*[1])='altIdentifier' or normalize-space(.)='')">An msIdentifier must contain either a repository or location.</s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <sequence>    <classRef key="model.placeNamePart"     expand="sequenceOptional"/>    <elementRef key="institution"     minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="repository"     minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="collection"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>    <elementRef key="idno" minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   </sequence>   <alternate minOccurs="0"    maxOccurs="unbounded">    <elementRef key="msName"/>    <elementRef key="objectName"/>    <elementRef key="altIdentifier"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element msIdentifier {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  (  (  [undefinedplaceName](#TEI.undefinedplaceName)?,  [undefinedcountry](#TEI.undefinedcountry)?,  [undefinedsettlement](#TEI.undefinedsettlement)?,  [undefinedinstitution](#TEI.undefinedinstitution)?,  [undefinedrepository](#TEI.undefinedrepository)?,  [collection](#TEI.collection)\*,  [undefinedidno](#TEI.undefinedidno)\*  ),  ( [msName](#TEI.msName) | [objectName](#TEI.objectName) | [altIdentifier](#TEI.altIdentifier) )\*  ) } |

### <msItem>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<msItem>** (manuscript item) describes an individual work or item within the intellectual content of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object. [[10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#mscoit)] | |
| **Module** | msdescription — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.msExcerpt (@defective) att.msClass (@class) |
| **Member of** | model.msItemPart |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msContents msItem |
| **May contain** | **core:** author bibl graphic lb note p pb respStmt title  **header:** funder idno principal  **linking:** anchor  **msdescription:** msDesc msItem |
| **Example** | <**msItem** **class**="#saga">  <**locus**>ff. 1r-24v</**locus**>  <**title**>Agrip af Noregs konunga sögum</**title**>  <**incipit**>regi oc h<**ex**>ann</**ex**> setiho  <**gap** **reason**="illegible" **extent**="7"/>sc    heim se<**ex**>m</**ex**> þio</**incipit**>  <**explicit**>h<**ex**>on</**ex**> hev<**ex**>er</**ex**>   <**ex**>oc</**ex**>þa buit hesta .ij. aNan viþ    fé enh<**ex**>on</**ex**>o<**ex**>m</**ex**> aNan til    reiþ<**ex**>ar</**ex**>  </**explicit**>  <**textLang** **mainLang**="non">Old Norse/Icelandic</**textLang**> </**msItem**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate minOccurs="0"    maxOccurs="unbounded">    <elementRef key="locus"/>    <elementRef key="locusGrp"/>   </alternate>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>    <alternate minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded">     <classRef key="model.titlepagePart"/>     <classRef key="model.msItemPart"/>     <classRef key="model.global"/>    </alternate>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element msItem {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.msExcerpt.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.msExcerpt),  [undefinedatt.msClass.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.msClass),  (  ( [locus](#TEI.locus) | [locusGrp](#TEI.locusGrp) )\*,  (  [undefinedmodel.pLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.pLike)+  | (  [undefinedmodel.titlepagePart](#TEI.undefinedmodel.titlepagePart) | [undefinedmodel.msItemPart](#TEI.undefinedmodel.msItemPart) | [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global) )+  )  ) } |

### <note>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<note>** (Anmerkung) enthält eine Anmerkung oder Annotation. [[3.9.1. Notes and Simple Annotation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONONO) [2.2.6. The Notes Statement](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD27) [3.12.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICON) [9.3.5.4. Notes within Entries](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DI.html#DITPNO)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **editor** Das Element enhält einen Apparateintrag der Editor:innen.  **original** Das Element enthält einen im edierten Dokument hinzugefügten Kommentar der Autor:innen. | | |
| **Member of** | model.noteLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address author bibl biblScope corr date head hi item list note p pubPlace publisher resp respStmt rs street title unclear  **figures:** cell table  **header:** change funder licence principal  **msdescription:** institution msItem origin repository  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  **textstructure:** body text  **transcr:** surface |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl corr date graphic hi lb list note p pb rs title unclear  **figures:** table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **msdescription:** msDesc  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Example** | Im folgenden Beispiel hat der Übersetzer eine Fußnote mit einer Erklärung des als "painterly" übersetzten Begriffs "Malerisch" bereitgestellt:  And yet it is not only  in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the  painterly <**note** **place**="bottom" **type**="gloss"  **resp**="#MDMH-1">  <**term** **xml:lang**="de">Malerisch</**term**>. This word has, in the German, two  distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object,  the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid  confusion, they have been distinguished in English as <**mentioned**>picturesque</**mentioned**> and <**mentioned**>painterly</**mentioned**> respectively. </**note**> style of the  Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this  psychological significance.    <!-- elsewhere in the document --> <**respStmt** **xml:id**="MDMH-1">  <**resp**>translation from German to English</**resp**>  <**name**>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</**name**> </**respStmt**>  Damit dieses Beispiel valide ist, muss der Code MDMH-1 an anderer Stelle definiert werden, beispielsweise durch die Angabe der Verantwortlichkeit im <respStmt>-Element des zugehörigen TEI-Headers. |
| **Example** | Das globale *@n*-Attribut kann verwendet werden, um das Symbol oder die Nummer anzugeben, die verwendet wird, um den Bezugspunkt der Anmerkung im Quelltext zu markieren, wie im folgenden Beispiel:  Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the  family during the second half of the eleventh century, <**note** **n**="126" **anchored**="true"> The  alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a reference to  Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </**note**> is well known from Geniza documents  published by Jacob Mann.  Wenn jedoch Anmerkungen sequenziell nummeriert sind und deren Nummerierung durch die elektronische Verarbeitung automatisch rekonstruiert werden kann, kann es als unnötig angesehen werden, die Nummerierung anzugeben. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element note {  attribute type { "editor" | "original" },  [undefinedmacro.specialPara](#TEI.undefinedmacro.specialPara)} |

### <objectDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<objectDesc>** (object description) contains a description of the physical components making up the object which is being described. [[10.7.1. Object Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#msph1)] | |
| **Module** | msdescription — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **form** | (form) a short project-specific name identifying the physical form of the carrier, for example as a codex, roll, fragment, partial leaf, cutting etc.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | |
| **Member of** | model.physDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** physDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p |
| **Example** | <**objectDesc** **form**="codex">  <**supportDesc** **material**="mixed">   <**p**>Early modern   <**material**>parchment</**material**> and   <**material**>paper</**material**>.</**p**>  </**supportDesc**>  <**layoutDesc**>   <**layout** **ruledLines**="25 32"/>  </**layoutDesc**> </**objectDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   <sequence>    <elementRef key="supportDesc"     minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="layoutDesc"     minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element objectDesc {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  attribute form { text }?,  ( [undefinedmodel.pLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.pLike)+ | ( [supportDesc](#TEI.supportDesc)?, [layoutDesc](#TEI.layoutDesc)? ) ) } |

### <orgName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<orgName>** (organization name) contains an organizational name. [[13.2.2. Organizational Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDORG)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike.agent |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address author bibl biblScope corr date head hi item note p pubPlace publisher resp respStmt rs street title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change creation funder licence principal  **msdescription:** institution origin repository  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement |
| **May contain** | **core:** address corr date graphic hi lb note pb rs title unclear  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Example** | About a year back, a question of considerable interest was agitated in the <**orgName** **key**="PAS1" **type**="voluntary">  <**placeName** **key**="PEN">Pennsyla.</**placeName**> Abolition Society </**orgName**> [...] |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element orgName {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.datable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.datable),  [undefinedatt.editLike.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.editLike),  [undefinedatt.personal.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.personal),  [undefinedatt.typed.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.typed),  [undefinedmacro.phraseSeq](#TEI.undefinedmacro.phraseSeq)} |

### <origin>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<origin>** (origin) contains any descriptive or other information concerning the origin of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object. [[10.8. History](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#mshy)] | |
| **Module** | msdescription — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** history |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl corr date graphic hi lb list note p pb rs title unclear  **figures:** table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **msdescription:** msDesc  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Example** | <**origin** **notBefore**="1802" **notAfter**="1845"  **evidence**="internal" **resp**="#AMH">Copied in <**name** **type**="origPlace">Derby</**name**>, probably from an  old Flemish original, between 1802 and 1845, according to <**persName** **xml:id**="AMH">Anne-Mette Hansen</**persName**>. </**origin**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element origin {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.editLike.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.editLike),  [undefinedatt.datable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.datable),  [undefinedmacro.specialPara](#TEI.undefinedmacro.specialPara)} |

### <p>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<p>** (Absatz) markiert einen Absatz in einem Prosatext. [[3.1. Paragraphs](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COPA) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.fragmentable (@part) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.pLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** item note  **figures:** cell  **header:** abstract change editionStmt encodingDesc licence publicationStmt  **msdescription:** handDesc history msContents msDesc msItem objectDesc origin physDesc  **textstructure:** body div |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl corr date graphic hi lb list note pb rs title unclear  **figures:** table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **msdescription:** msDesc  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Example** | <**p**>Hallgerd was outside. <**q**>There is blood on your axe,</**q**> she said. <**q**>What have you    done?</**q**> </**p**> <**p**>  <**q**>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</**q**> replied Thjostolf. </**p**> <**p**>  <**q**>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</**q**> she said. </**p**> <**p**>  <**q**>Yes,</**q**> said Thjostolf. <**q**>And now you must think up some plan for me.</**q**> </**p**> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:report test=" (ancestor::tei:ab or ancestor::tei:p) and not( ancestor::tei:floatingText |parent::tei:exemplum |parent::tei:item |parent::tei:note |parent::tei:q |parent::tei:quote |parent::tei:remarks |parent::tei:said |parent::tei:sp |parent::tei:stage |parent::tei:cell |parent::tei:figure )"> Abstract model violation: Paragraphs may not occur inside other paragraphs or ab elements. </sch:report> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:report test=" (ancestor::tei:l or ancestor::tei:lg) and not( ancestor::tei:floatingText |parent::tei:figure |parent::tei:note )"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, p, or ab, unless p is a child of figure or note, or is a descendant of floatingText. </sch:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element p {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.declaring.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.declaring),  [undefinedatt.fragmentable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.fragmentable),  [undefinedatt.written.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.written),  [undefinedmacro.paraContent](#TEI.undefinedmacro.paraContent)} |

### <pb>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<pb>** (Seitenanfang) markiert den Anfang einer neuen Seite in einem Dokument mit Seitenzahlen [[3.11.3. Milestone Elements](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **xml:id** | (identifier) automatisch generierte id (img)   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.global | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [ID](https://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/#ID) | | | **n** | (number) Die Nummer der Seite, auf das sich das pb-Element bezieht (automatisch generiert).   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.global | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.text | | | **facs** | (facsimile) points to one or more images, portions of an image, or surfaces which correspond to the current element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.global.facs | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address author bibl biblScope corr date head hi item list note p pubPlace publisher resp rs street title unclear  **figures:** cell table  **header:** change funder licence principal  **msdescription:** institution msItem origin repository  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  **textstructure:** body div text  **transcr:** surface |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | Ein <pb>-Element soll am Beginn der Seite stehen, die es kennzeichnet. Das globale *@n*-Attribut gibt die Zahl (oder einen anderen Wert) an, der mit dieser Seite verbunden ist. Üblicherweise ist das die Seitenzahl oder eine auf der Seite abgedruckte Signatur, da die Position in der physikalischen Sequenz durch das <pb>-Element implizit ist.  Das *@type*-Attribut kann verwendet werden, den Seitenumbruch näher zu beschreiben, wenn nicht die speziellen Attribute *@break* (Worttrennung), *@ed* oder *@edRef* (Textzeuge, in dem der Seitenumbruch vorkommt) verwendet werden können. |
| **Example** | Die Seitenzahlen können in verschiedenen Ausgaben eines Textes variieren.  <**p**> ... <**pb** **n**="145" **ed**="ed2"/> <!-- Seite 145 in Ausgabe "ed2" beginnt hier --> ... <**pb** **n**="283" **ed**="ed1"/> <!-- Seite 283 in Ausgabe "ed1" beginnt hier --> ... </**p**> |
| **Example** | Ein Seitenumbruch kann über das *@facs*-Attribut mit einem Faksimile der Seite verknüpft werden.  <**body**>  <**pb** **n**="1" **facs**="page1.png"/> <!-- page1.png enthält eine Abbildung der Seite; der enthaltene Text ist hier kodiert -->  <**p**> <!-- ... -->  </**p**>  <**pb** **n**="2" **facs**="page2.png"/> <!-- dasselbe gilt für Seite 2 -->  <**p**> <!-- ... -->  </**p**> </**body**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <empty/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element pb {  attribute xml:id { text },  attribute n { text }?,  attribute facs { text },  empty } |

### <persName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<persName>** (personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including one or more of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike.agent |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address author bibl biblScope corr date head hi item note p pubPlace publisher resp respStmt rs street title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change creation funder licence principal  **msdescription:** institution origin repository  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement |
| **May contain** | **core:** address corr date graphic hi lb note pb rs title unclear  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>Edward</**forename**>  <**forename**>George</**forename**>  <**surname** **type**="linked">Bulwer-Lytton</**surname**>, <**roleName**>Baron Lytton of  <**placeName**>Knebworth</**placeName**>  </**roleName**> </**persName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element persName {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.datable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.datable),  [undefinedatt.editLike.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.editLike),  [undefinedatt.personal.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.personal),  [undefinedatt.typed.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.typed),  [undefinedmacro.phraseSeq](#TEI.undefinedmacro.phraseSeq)} |

### <physDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<physDesc>** (physical description) contains a full physical description of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object optionally subdivided using more specialized elements from the model.physDescPart class. [[10.7. Physical Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#msph)] | |
| **Module** | msdescription — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **msdescription:** handDesc objectDesc |
| **Example** | <**physDesc**>  <**objectDesc** **form**="codex">   <**supportDesc** **material**="perg">    <**support**>Parchment.</**support**>    <**extent**>i + 55 leaves    <**dimensions** **scope**="all" **type**="leaf"      **unit**="inch">      <**height**>7¼</**height**>      <**width**>5⅜</**width**>     </**dimensions**>    </**extent**>   </**supportDesc**>   <**layoutDesc**>    <**layout** **columns**="2">In double columns.</**layout**>   </**layoutDesc**>  </**objectDesc**>  <**handDesc**>   <**p**>Written in more than one hand.</**p**>  </**handDesc**>  <**decoDesc**>   <**p**>With a few coloured capitals.</**p**>  </**decoDesc**> </**physDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="0"    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   <classRef key="model.physDescPart"    expand="sequenceOptional"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element physDesc {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  ( [undefinedmodel.pLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.pLike)\*, [undefinedobjectDesc](#TEI.undefinedobjectDesc)?, [undefinedhandDesc](#TEI.undefinedhandDesc)? ) } |

### <placeName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<placeName>** (place name) contains an absolute or relative place name. [[13.2.3. Place Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address author bibl biblScope corr date head hi item note p pubPlace publisher resp rs street title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change creation funder licence principal  **msdescription:** institution msIdentifier origin repository  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement |
| **May contain** | **core:** address corr date graphic hi lb note pb rs title unclear  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**settlement**>Rochester</**settlement**>  <**region**>New York</**region**> </**placeName**> |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**geogName**>Arrochar Alps</**geogName**>  <**region**>Argylshire</**region**> </**placeName**> |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**measure**>10 miles</**measure**>  <**offset**>Northeast of</**offset**>  <**settlement**>Attica</**settlement**> </**placeName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element placeName {  [undefinedatt.datable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.datable),  [undefinedatt.editLike.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.editLike),  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.personal.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.personal),  [undefinedatt.typed.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.typed),  [undefinedmacro.phraseSeq](#TEI.undefinedmacro.phraseSeq)} |

### <postCode>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<postCode>** (postal code) contains a numerical or alphanumeric code used as part of a postal address to simplify sorting or delivery of mail. [[3.6.2. Addresses](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.addrPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Note** | The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used. |
| **Example** | <**postCode**>HR1 3LR</**postCode**> |
| **Example** | <**postCode**>60142-7</**postCode**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element postCode { [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global), text } |

### <principal>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<principal>** (Projektleiter) gibt den Namen des Projektleiters an, der für die Erstellung eines elektronischen Textes verantwortlich ist. [[2.2.1. The Title Statement](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21)] | |
| **Module** | header — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt  **msdescription:** msItem |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date hi lb note pb rs title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Example** | <**principal** **ref**="http://viaf.org/viaf/105517912">Gary Taylor</**principal**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element principal {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.canonical.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.canonical),  [undefinedatt.datable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.datable),  [undefinedmacro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.undefinedmacro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

### <profileDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<profileDesc>** (Beschreibung des Textprofils) enthält eine detaillierte Beschreibung der nicht-bibliografischen Merkmale des Textes, besonders der verwendeten Sprachen und Subsprachen, der Entstehungsbedingungen eines Textes sowie der Beteiligten und deren Umfeld. [[2.4. The Profile Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4) [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11)] | |
| **Module** | header — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.teiHeaderPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **header:** abstract creation |
| **Note** | Obwohl durch das Inhaltsmodell erlaubt, erscheint es in den seltensten Fällen sinnvoll, mehrere Vorkommen der erlaubten Kindelemente der <profileDesc> zu notieren – außer diese beziehen sich auf unterschiedliche Texte. |
| **Example** | <**profileDesc**>  <**langUsage**>   <**language** **ident**="fr">French</**language**>  </**langUsage**>  <**textDesc** **n**="novel">   <**channel** **mode**="w">print; part issues</**channel**>   <**constitution** **type**="single"/>   <**derivation** **type**="original"/>   <**domain** **type**="art"/>   <**factuality** **type**="fiction"/>   <**interaction** **type**="none"/>   <**preparedness** **type**="prepared"/>   <**purpose** **type**="entertain" **degree**="high"/>   <**purpose** **type**="inform" **degree**="medium"/>  </**textDesc**>  <**settingDesc**>   <**setting**>    <**name**>Paris, France</**name**>    <**time**>Late 19th century</**time**>   </**setting**>  </**settingDesc**> </**profileDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.profileDescPart"   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element profileDesc {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedmodel.profileDescPart](#TEI.undefinedmodel.profileDescPart)\* } |

### <pubPlace>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<pubPlace>** (Verlagsort) enthält den Namen des Orts, an dem ein bibliografisches Objekt veröffentlicht wurde. [[3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) |
| **Member of** | model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** publicationStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** address corr date graphic hi lb note pb rs title unclear  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Example** | <**publicationStmt**>  <**publisher**>Oxford University Press</**publisher**>  <**pubPlace**>Oxford</**pubPlace**>  <**date**>1989</**date**> </**publicationStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element pubPlace {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.naming.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.naming),  [undefinedmacro.phraseSeq](#TEI.undefinedmacro.phraseSeq)} |

### <publicationStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<publicationStmt>** (Angaben zur Veröffentlichung) umfasst Angaben zu Veröffentlichung oder Vertrieb eines elektronischen oder sonstigen Textes. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) [2.2. The File Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2)] | |
| **Module** | header — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date p pubPlace publisher  **header:** availability idno |
| **Note** | Wenn die Angaben zur Veröffentlichung mehrere Mitglieder der Klassen model.publicationStmtPart.agency oder model.publicationStmtPart.detail enthalten und nicht einen oder mehrere Absätze (<p>) bzw. unbestimmte Einheiten (<ab>), dann hat die Reihenfolge der Elemente eine Bedeutung, auf die zu achten ist. So müssen Elemente, die Angaben über den Veröffentlichungsort, die Adresse, den Identifikator, die Verfügbarkeit und das Veröffentlichungsdatum enthalten, auf den Namen des Verlags, des Distributors oder der Freigabeinstanz folgen, und zwar möglichst in dieser Reihenfolge. |
| **Example** | <**publicationStmt**>  <**publisher**>C. Muquardt </**publisher**>  <**pubPlace**>Bruxelles &amp; Leipzig</**pubPlace**>  <**date** **when**="1846"/> </**publicationStmt**> |
| **Example** | <**publicationStmt**>  <**publisher**>Chadwyck Healey</**publisher**>  <**pubPlace**>Cambridge</**pubPlace**>  <**availability**>   <**p**>Available under licence only</**p**>  </**availability**>  <**date** **when**="1992">1992</**date**> </**publicationStmt**> |
| **Example** | <**publicationStmt**>  <**publisher**>Zea Books</**publisher**>  <**pubPlace**>Lincoln, NE</**pubPlace**>  <**date**>2017</**date**>  <**availability**>   <**p**>This is an open access work licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International license.</**p**>  </**availability**>  <**ptr** **target**="http://digitalcommons.unl.edu/zeabook/55"/> </**publicationStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <sequence minOccurs="1"    maxOccurs="unbounded">    <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.agency"/>    <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.detail"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   </sequence>   <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element publicationStmt {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  (  (  [undefinedmodel.publicationStmtPart.agency](#TEI.undefinedmodel.publicationStmtPart.agency),  [undefinedmodel.publicationStmtPart.detail](#TEI.undefinedmodel.publicationStmtPart.detail)\*  )+  | [undefinedmodel.pLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.pLike)+  ) } |

### <publisher>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<publisher>** (Verlag) gibt den Namen der Organisation an, die für die Veröffentlichung und Verbreitung eines bibliografischen Objekts verantwortlich ist. [[3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** publicationStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** address corr date graphic hi lb note pb rs title unclear  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Note** | Außer bei der Transkription von bibliografischen Angaben, ist der vollständige Name des Unternehmens gegenüber einer abgekürzten Version, wie sie etwa auf der gedruckten Titelseite zu finden ist, zu bevorzugen. |
| **Example** | <**imprint**>  <**pubPlace**>Oxford</**pubPlace**>  <**publisher**>Clarendon Press</**publisher**>  <**date**>1987</**date**> </**imprint**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element publisher {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.canonical.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.canonical),  [undefinedmacro.phraseSeq](#TEI.undefinedmacro.phraseSeq)} |

### <repository>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<repository>** (repository) contains the name of a repository within which manuscripts or other objects are stored, possibly forming part of an institution. [[10.4. The Manuscript Identifier](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#msid)] | |
| **Module** | msdescription — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msIdentifier |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date hi lb note pb rs title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Example** | <**msIdentifier**>  <**settlement**>Oxford</**settlement**>  <**institution**>University of Oxford</**institution**>  <**repository**>Bodleian Library</**repository**>  <**idno**>MS. Bodley 406</**idno**> </**msIdentifier**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element repository {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.naming.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.naming),  [undefinedmacro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.undefinedmacro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

### <resp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<resp>** (Verantwortlichkeit) enthält eine Phrase, die die Art der intellektuellen Verantwortung einer Person oder die Rolle einer Organisation bei der Herstellung oder Distribution eines Werkes beschreibt. [[3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21) [2.2.2. The Edition Statement](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** respStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date hi lb note pb rs title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Note** | Das *@ref*-Attribut, das aus der Klasse att.canonical vererbt wird, kann benutzt werden, um die Art der Verantwortlichkeit in normalisierter Form zu beschreiben. Es verweist direkt auf eine standardisierte Liste von Verantwortlichkeitstypen, wie sie z. B. in Normdatensätzen gepflegt werden, wie zum Beispiel folgende Liste für bibliografische Zwecke: <http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html>. |
| **Example** | <**respStmt**>  <**resp** **ref**="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/com.html">compiler</**resp**>  <**name**>Edward Child</**name**> </**respStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element resp {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.canonical.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.canonical),  [undefinedatt.datable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.datable),  [undefinedmacro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.undefinedmacro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

### <respStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<respStmt>** (Angaben zur Verantwortlichkeit) enthält Angaben zur Verantwortlichkeit für den intellektuellen Inhalt eines Textes, einer Edition, einer Aufnahme oder Reihe, wo die spezialisierten Elemente <author>, <editor> etc. nicht ausreichen oder unzutreffend sind; auch verwendbar für Informationen zu Individuen oder Organisationen, die bei der Produktion oder Verbreitung eines bibliografischen Objekts eine Rolle gespielt. [[3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21) [2.2.2. The Edition Statement](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt  **msdescription:** msItem |
| **May contain** | **core:** note resp  **namesdates:** orgName persName |
| **Example** | <**respStmt**>  <**resp**>transcribed from original ms</**resp**>  <**persName**>Claus Huitfeldt</**persName**> </**respStmt**> |
| **Example** | <**respStmt**>  <**resp**>converted to XML encoding</**resp**>  <**name**>Alan Morrison</**name**> </**respStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate>    <sequence>     <elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1"      maxOccurs="unbounded"/>     <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"      minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>    </sequence>    <sequence>     <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"      minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>     <elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1"      maxOccurs="unbounded"/>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <elementRef key="note" minOccurs="0"    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element respStmt {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.canonical.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.canonical),  (  (  ( [undefinedresp](#TEI.undefinedresp)+, [undefinedmodel.nameLike.agent](#TEI.undefinedmodel.nameLike.agent)+ )  | ( [undefinedmodel.nameLike.agent](#TEI.undefinedmodel.nameLike.agent)+, [undefinedresp](#TEI.undefinedresp)+ )  ),  [undefinednote](#TEI.undefinednote)\*  ) } |

### <revisionDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<revisionDesc>** (Beschreibung der Dateihistorie) dokumentiert die Änderungen, die an der Datei vorgenommen wurden. [[2.6. The Revision Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6) [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11)] | |
| **Module** | header — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **status** | |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Legal values are:** | **draft** Document is still being changed.  **done** | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **core:** list  **header:** change |
| **Note** | Wenn an diesem Element gesetzt, sollte das *@status*-Attribut den aktuellen Status des Dokuments widerspiegeln. An jedem <change>-Kindelement gibt das selbe Attribut den jeweiligen Status zum Zeitpunkt der Änderung an. Die <change>-Elemente werden der Konvention nach so angeordnet, dass die letzte Änderung am Anfang steht und die erste zum Schluss. |
| **Example** | <**revisionDesc** **status**="embargoed">  <**change** **when**="1991-11-11" **who**="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </**change**> </**revisionDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">   <elementRef key="list"/>   <elementRef key="listChange"/>   <elementRef key="change" minOccurs="1"    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element revisionDesc {  attribute status { "draft" | "done" }?,  ( [undefinedlist](#TEI.undefinedlist) | [listChange](#TEI.listChange) | [undefinedchange](#TEI.undefinedchange)+ ) } |

### <row>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<row>** (Tabellenzeile) enthält eine Zeile einer Tabelle. [[14.1.1. TEI Tables](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FT.html#FTTAB1)] | |
| **Module** | figures — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.tableDecoration (@role, @rows, @cols) |
| **Contained by** | **figures:** table |
| **May contain** | **figures:** cell |
| **Example** | <**row** **role**="data">  <**cell** **role**="label">Classics</**cell**>  <**cell**>Idle listless and unimproving</**cell**> </**row**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <elementRef key="cell" minOccurs="1"   maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element row {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.tableDecoration.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.tableDecoration),  [undefinedcell](#TEI.undefinedcell)+ } |

### <rs>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<rs>** (verweisende Zeichenkette) enthält eine allgemeine Benennung oder eine verweisende Zeichenkette. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER) [3.6.1. Referring Strings](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONARS)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Legal values are:** | **person** rs referentiert Person über den Key in der Datenbank  **institution** rs referentiert Institution über den Key in der Datenbank  **lit** rs referentiert Literatur über den Key in der Zotero-Datenbank  **statute** rs referentiert Gesetzestext über den Key in der Datenbank  **term** rs referentiert Begriff/Abkürzung über den Key in der Datenbank | | | **key** | |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | teidata.text | | |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address author bibl biblScope corr date head hi item note p pubPlace publisher resp rs street title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change creation funder licence principal  **msdescription:** institution origin repository  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement |
| **May contain** | **core:** address corr date graphic hi lb note pb rs title unclear  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Example** | <**q**>My dear <**rs** **type**="person">Mr. Bennet</**rs**>, </**q**> said <**rs** **type**="person">his lady</**rs**>  to him one day,  <**q**>have you heard that <**rs** **type**="place">Netherfield Park</**rs**> is let at  last?</**q**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element rs {  attribute type { "person" | "institution" | "lit" | "statute" | "term" },  attribute key { text },  [undefinedmacro.phraseSeq](#TEI.undefinedmacro.phraseSeq)} |

### <settlement>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<settlement>** (settlement) contains the name of a settlement such as a city, town, or village identified as a single geo-political or administrative unit. [[13.2.3. Place Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address author bibl biblScope corr date head hi item note p pubPlace publisher resp rs street title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change creation funder licence principal  **msdescription:** institution msIdentifier origin repository  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement |
| **May contain** | **core:** address corr date graphic hi lb note pb rs title unclear  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**settlement** **type**="town">Glasgow</**settlement**>  <**region**>Scotland</**region**> </**placeName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element settlement {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.naming.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.naming),  [undefinedatt.typed.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.typed),  [undefinedatt.datable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.datable),  [undefinedmacro.phraseSeq](#TEI.undefinedmacro.phraseSeq)} |

### <sourceDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<sourceDesc>** (Beschreibung der Quellen) Dokument auf dem der Inhalt der Datei basiert. [[2.2.7. The Source Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3)] | |
| **Module** | header — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **msdescription:** msDesc |
| **Example** | <**sourceDesc**>  <**bibl**>   <**title** **level**="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</**title**>. In  <**author**>Victor E Neuberg</**author**>, <**title**>The Penny Histories</**title**>.  <**publisher**>OUP</**publisher**>   <**date**>1968</**date**>. </**bibl**> </**sourceDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**sourceDesc**>  <**p**>Born digital: no previous source exists.</**p**> </**sourceDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <elementRef key="msDesc" minOccurs="1"   maxOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element sourceDesc {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.declarable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.declarable),  [undefinedmsDesc](#TEI.undefinedmsDesc)} |

### <street>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<street>** contains a full street address including any name or number identifying a building as well as the name of the street or route on which it is located. [[3.6.2. Addresses](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.addrPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address |
| **May contain** | **core:** address corr date graphic hi lb note pb rs title unclear  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Note** | The order and presentation of house names and numbers and street names, etc., may vary considerably in different countries. The encoding should reflect the order which is appropriate in the country concerned. |
| **Example** | <**street**>via della Faggiola, 36</**street**> |
| **Example** | <**street**>  <**name**>Duntaggin</**name**>, 110 Southmoor Road </**street**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element street { [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global), [undefinedmacro.phraseSeq](#TEI.undefinedmacro.phraseSeq) } |

### <surface>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<surface>** defines a written surface as a two-dimensional coordinate space, optionally grouping one or more graphic representations of that space, zones of interest within that space, and transcriptions of the writing within them. [[11.1. Digital Facsimiles](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHFAX) [11.2.2. Embedded Transcription](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHZLAB)] | |
| **Module** | transcr — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.coordinated (@start, @ulx, @uly, @lrx, @lry, @points) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **attachment** | describes the method by which this surface is or was connected to the main surface   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **glued** glued in place  **pinned** pinned or stapled in place  **sewn** sewn in place | | | **flipping** | indicates whether the surface is attached and folded in such a way as to provide two writing surfaces   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.truthValue | | |
| **Contained by** | **transcr:** facsimile surface |
| **May contain** | **core:** graphic lb note pb  **linking:** anchor  **transcr:** surface |
| **Note** | The <surface> element represents any two-dimensional space on some physical surface forming part of the source material, such as a piece of paper, a face of a monument, a billboard, a scroll, a leaf etc.  The coordinate space defined by this element may be thought of as a grid *@lrx* - *@ulx* units wide and *@uly* - *@lry* units high.  The <surface> element may contain graphic representations or transcriptions of written zones, or both. The coordinate values used by every <zone> element contained by this element are to be understood with reference to the same grid.  Where it is useful or meaningful to do so, any grouping of multiple <surface> elements may be indicated using the <surfaceGrp> element. |
| **Example** | <**facsimile**>  <**surface** **ulx**="0" **uly**="0" **lrx**="200" **lry**="300">   <**graphic** **url**="Bovelles-49r.png"/>  </**surface**> </**facsimile**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate minOccurs="0"    maxOccurs="unbounded">    <classRef key="model.global"/>    <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>    <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>   </alternate>   <sequence minOccurs="0"    maxOccurs="unbounded">    <alternate>     <elementRef key="zone"/>     <elementRef key="line"/>     <elementRef key="path"/>     <elementRef key="surface"/>     <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/>    </alternate>    <classRef key="model.global"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element surface {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.coordinated.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.coordinated),  [undefinedatt.declaring.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.declaring),  [undefinedatt.typed.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.typed),  attribute attachment { text }?,  attribute flipping { text }?,  (  (  [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global) | [undefinedmodel.labelLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.labelLike) | [undefinedmodel.graphicLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.graphicLike) )\*,  (  ( [zone](#TEI.zone) | [line](#TEI.line) | [path](#TEI.path) | [undefinedsurface](#TEI.undefinedsurface) | [surfaceGrp](#TEI.surfaceGrp) ),  [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global)\*  )\*  ) } |

### <table>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<table>** (Tabelle) enthält Text, der in Tabellenform, also in Zeilen und Spalten, dargestellt ist. [[14.1.1. TEI Tables](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FT.html#FTTAB1)] | |
| **Module** | figures — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **rows** | (Zeilen) gibt die Anzahl der Tabellenzeilen an.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.count | | **Note** | Wenn keine Zeilenanzahl angegeben wird, muss diese von einer Applikation berechnet werden.  Zeilen sollten von oben nach unten notiert werden. | | | **cols** | (Spalten) gibt die Anzahl der Tabellenspalten an.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.count | | **Note** | Wenn keine Spaltenanzahl angegeben wird, muss diese von einer Applikation berechnet werden.  In einer Zeile sollten Spalten von links nach rechts notiert werden. | | |
| **Member of** | model.listLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** corr head hi item note p title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** abstract change licence  **msdescription:** origin  **textstructure:** body |
| **May contain** | **core:** graphic head lb note pb  **figures:** row  **linking:** anchor |
| **Note** | Enthält eine Reihe von Zeilen und optional eine Überschrift.  Jegliche Information die grafische Darstellung betreffend, sollte mit dem globalen *@rend*-Attribut auf der Ebene von Tabelle, Zeile oder Zelle verzeichnet werden. |
| **Example** | <**table** **rows**="4" **cols**="4">  <**head**>Poor Men's Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</**head**>  <**row** **role**="label">   <**cell** **role**="data"/>   <**cell** **role**="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">Beds</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</**cell**>  </**row**>  <**row** **role**="data">   <**cell** **role**="label">Bury St Edmund's</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">5</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">8</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">128</**cell**>  </**row**>  <**row** **role**="data">   <**cell** **role**="label">Thetford</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">3</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">6</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">36</**cell**>  </**row**>  <**row** **role**="data">   <**cell** **role**="label">Attleboro'</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">3</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">5</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">20</**cell**>  </**row**>  <**row** **role**="data">   <**cell** **role**="label">Wymondham</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">1</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">11</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">22</**cell**>  </**row**> </**table**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate minOccurs="0"    maxOccurs="unbounded">    <classRef key="model.headLike"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>   <alternate>    <sequence minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded">     <elementRef key="row"/>     <classRef key="model.global"      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>    </sequence>    <sequence minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded">     <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>     <classRef key="model.global"      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <sequence minOccurs="0"    maxOccurs="unbounded">    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element table {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.typed.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.typed),  attribute rows { text }?,  attribute cols { text }?,  (  ( [undefinedmodel.headLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.headLike) | [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global) )\*,  (  ( [undefinedrow](#TEI.undefinedrow), [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global)\* )+  | ( [undefinedmodel.graphicLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.graphicLike), [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global)\* )+  ),  ( [undefinedmodel.divBottom](#TEI.undefinedmodel.divBottom), [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global)\* )\*  ) } |

### <teiHeader>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<teiHeader>** (TEI-Header (elektronische Titelseite)) beinhaltet beschreibende und erklärende Metadaten, die einer digitalen Ressource oder einer Sammlung von Ressourcen vorangestellt sind. [[2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11) [15.1. Varieties of Composite Text](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF)] | |
| **Module** | header — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **header:** encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc |
| **Note** | Eines der wenigen Elemente, die verpflichtend für ein valides TEI-Dokument sind. |
| **Example** | <**teiHeader**>  <**fileDesc**>   <**titleStmt**>    <**title**>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</**title**>    <**author**>Shakespeare, William (1564–1616)</**author**>    <**respStmt**>     <**resp**>Originally prepared by</**resp**>     <**name**>Trevor Howard-Hill</**name**>    </**respStmt**>    <**respStmt**>     <**resp**>Revised and edited by</**resp**>     <**name**>Christine Avern-Carr</**name**>    </**respStmt**>   </**titleStmt**>   <**publicationStmt**>    <**distributor**>Oxford Text Archive</**distributor**>    <**address**>     <**addrLine**>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</**addrLine**>    </**address**>    <**idno** **type**="OTA">119</**idno**>    <**availability**>     <**p**>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</**p**>    </**availability**>    <**date** **when**="1968">1968</**date**>   </**publicationStmt**>   <**sourceDesc**>    <**bibl**>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile,        1968)</**bibl**>   </**sourceDesc**>  </**fileDesc**>  <**encodingDesc**>   <**projectDesc**>    <**p**>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of old-spelling        concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised for use during the        editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</**p**>   </**projectDesc**>   <**editorialDecl**>    <**correction**>     <**p**>Turned letters are silently corrected.</**p**>    </**correction**>    <**normalization**>     <**p**>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and ligatured          forms are not encoded.</**p**>    </**normalization**>   </**editorialDecl**>   <**refsDecl** **xml:id**="ASLREF">    <**cRefPattern** **matchPattern**="(\S+) ([^.]+)\.(.\*)"     **replacementPattern**="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2/[@n='$2']//lb[@n='$3'])">     <**p**>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that          listed here: <**list**>       <**item**>the <**att**>n</**att**> value of the preceding <**gi**>lb</**gi**>       </**item**>       <**item**>a period</**item**>       <**item**>the <**att**>n</**att**> value of the ancestor <**gi**>div2</**gi**>       </**item**>       <**item**>a space</**item**>       <**item**>the <**att**>n</**att**> value of the parent <**gi**>div1</**gi**>       </**item**>      </**list**>     </**p**>    </**cRefPattern**>   </**refsDecl**>  </**encodingDesc**>  <**revisionDesc**>   <**list**>    <**item**>     <**date** **when**="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</**date**> Last checked by CAC</**item**>    <**item**>     <**date** **when**="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</**date**> LB made new file</**item**>   </**list**>  </**revisionDesc**> </**teiHeader**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>   <classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart"    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   <elementRef key="revisionDesc"    minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element teiHeader {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  ( [undefinedfileDesc](#TEI.undefinedfileDesc), [undefinedmodel.teiHeaderPart](#TEI.undefinedmodel.teiHeaderPart)\*, [undefinedrevisionDesc](#TEI.undefinedrevisionDesc)? ) } |

### <text>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<text>** (text) enthält einen einzelnen, eigenständigen oder kompilierten Text, zum Beispiel ein Gedicht oder Drama, eine Sammlung von Aufsätzen, einen Roman, ein Wörterbuch oder ein Korpus-Sample. [[4. Default Text Structure](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS) [15.1. Varieties of Composite Text](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.resource |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **core:** lb note pb  **linking:** anchor  **textstructure:** body |
| **Note** | Dieses Element sollte nicht benutzt werden, um einen Text wiederzugeben, der an irgendeiner Stelle in einer anderen Struktur eingefügt ist, wie z. B. eine eingebettete oder zitierte Erzählung. Für diesen Zweck wird das Element <floatingText> benutzt. |
| **Example** | Der Textkörper kann durch eine Gruppierung von verschachtelten Texten ersetzt werden, wie das folgende Beispiel zeigt:  <**text**>  <**front**> <!-- Vorspann für die gesamte Gruppierung -->  </**front**>  <**group**>   <**text**> <!-- erster Text -->   </**text**>   <**text**> <!-- zweiter Text -->   </**text**>  </**group**> </**text**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.global"    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="front"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   </sequence>   <alternate>    <elementRef key="body"/>    <elementRef key="group"/>   </alternate>   <classRef key="model.global"    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="back"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element text {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.declaring.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.declaring),  [undefinedatt.typed.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.typed),  [undefinedatt.written.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.written),  (  [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global)\*,  ( [front](#TEI.front), [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global)\* )?,  ( [undefinedbody](#TEI.undefinedbody) | [group](#TEI.group) ),  [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global)\*,  ( [back](#TEI.back), [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global)\* )?  ) } |

### <title>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<title>** (Titel) beinhaltet einen Titel eines beliebigen Werks. [[3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | klassifiziert den Titel entsprechend einer geeigneten Typologie.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **main** Haupttitel  **sub** (untergeordnet) Untertitel oder Titel eines Teilbereichs  **alt** (alternativ) alternativer Titel, oft in einer anderen Sprache, unter dem das Werk auch bekannt ist.  **short** Kurztitel  **desc** (beschreibend) Umschreibung des Werks, die als Titel fungiert. | | **Note** | Dieses Attribut wird bereitgestellt, um die Analyse und die Verarbeitung von Titeln auf Basis ihres Typs zu vereinfachen; in Fällen, bei denen ein derart spezielles Vorgehen nicht notwendig ist, ist auch eine entsprechende Analyse nicht notwendig, und der gesamte Titel, inkl. Untertitel und allfälligen parallelen Titeln, kann mit einem einzigen <title>-Element ausgezeichnet werden. | | | **level** | gibt den bibliografischen Typ eines Titels an, d.h. ob er einen Artikel, ein Buch, eine Zeitschrift, eine Reihe oder unpubliziertes Material bezeichnet.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **a** (unselbständig) der Titel gehört zu einer unselbständigen Publikation, wie einem Artikel, Gedicht oder einem anderen Werk, das als Teil einer umfangreicheren Einheit publiziert wurde.  **m** (Monografie) der Titel bezieht sich auf Monografien wie z.B. ein Bücher oder andere selbständige Publikationen, also auch auf einzelne Bände in einem mehrbändigen Werk.  **j** (Zeitschrift) der Titel bezieht sich auf jede Art fortlaufender oder periodischer Veröffentlichungen wie z. B. Zeitschriften, Magazine oder Zeitungen.  **s** (Reihe) der Titel bezeichnet eine Reihe von ansonsten selbständig publizierten Veröffentlichungen, wie z. B. eine Buchreihe.  **u** (unveröffentlicht) der Titel bezieht sich auf unveröffentliches Material (incl. universitäre Qualifikationsarbeiten, soweit sie nicht von einem Verlag veröffentlicht worden sind). | | **Note** | Der Typ eines Titels wird manchmal durch seinen Kontext bestimmt: wenn ein Titel z. B. innerhalb des Elements <analytic> verwendet wird, ist es ipso facto demnach Level ‘a’; ein Titel innerhalb eines <series>-Elements als Level ‘s’. Daher ist das *@level*-Attribut nicht zwingend notwendig, wenn die Position eindeutig erschlossen werden kann. Wenn es in derartigen Kontexten dennoch gesetzt wird, sollte der Attributwert dem impliziten Wert des Eltern-Elements nicht widersprechen. | | |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike model.msQuoteLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** author bibl biblScope corr date head hi item note p pubPlace publisher resp rs street title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change creation funder licence principal titleStmt  **msdescription:** institution msItem origin repository  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl corr date graphic hi lb list note pb rs title unclear  **figures:** table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **msdescription:** msDesc  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Note** | Die Attribute *@key* und *@ref*, die durch die Zugehörigkeit zur Klasse att.canonical verfügbar sind, können dafür verwendet werden, den kanonischen Titel anzugeben: Ersteres indem (z. B.) die Kennung eines Datensatzes einer externen Bibliothek herangezogen wird; Letzteres durch den Verweis auf ein XML-Element, das den kanonischen Titel enthält. |
| **Example** | <**title**>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of  a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,  18–21 July 1989</**title**> |
| **Example** | <**title**>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable  edition</**title**> |
| **Example** | <**title** **type**="full">  <**title** **type**="main">Synthèse</**title**>  <**title** **type**="sub">an international journal for    epistemology, methodology and history of    science</**title**> </**title**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element title {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  [undefinedatt.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.undefinedatt.typed),  [undefinedatt.canonical.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.canonical),  [undefinedatt.datable.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.datable),  attribute type { text }?,  attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,  [undefinedmacro.paraContent](#TEI.undefinedmacro.paraContent)} |

### <titleStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<titleStmt>** (Angaben zum Titel) umfasst Angaben zum Titel eines Werks und zu den für seinen Inhalt Verantwortlichen. [[2.2.1. The Title Statement](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21) [2.2. The File Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2)] | |
| **Module** | header — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** author respStmt title  **header:** funder principal |
| **Example** | <**titleStmt**>  <**title**>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable transcription</**title**>  <**respStmt**>   <**resp**>compiled by</**resp**>   <**name**>P.J. Lucas</**name**>  </**respStmt**> </**titleStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1"    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>   <classRef key="model.respLike"    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element titleStmt {  [undefinedatt.global.attributes](#TEI.undefinedatt.global),  ( [undefinedtitle](#TEI.undefinedtitle)+, [undefinedmodel.respLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.respLike)\* ) } |

### <unclear>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<unclear>** (unclear) Markiert eine nicht oder nur vage entzifferbare Stelle. [[11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHDA) [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDADD)] | |
| **Module** | core — Appendix |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **reason** | gibt den Grund an, warum das Material schwer zu transkribieren ist.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace | | **Suggested values include:** | **illegible** (unleserlich)  **inaudible** (nicht hörbar)  **faded** (ausgebleicht)  **background\_noise** (Hintergrundlärm)  **eccentric\_ductus** (exzentrischer Duktus) indicates illegibility due to an unusual, awkward, or incompetent execution of a glyph or glyphs | | <**div**>  <**head**>Rx</**head**>  <**p**>500 mg <**unclear** **reason**="illegible">placebo</**unclear**>  </**p**> </**div**> | | | **Note** | Ein oder mehrere Wörter können verwendet werden, um den Grund zu beschreiben. In der Regel wird jedes Wort auf eine einzige Ursache verweisen. | | | **agent** | basiert die Schwierigkeit bei der Transkription auf einer schadhaften Stelle am Textträger, kann der Grund dafür hier genauer kategorisiert werden.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **rubbing** Schaden, verursacht durch Abrieb der Blattkanten beim Umblättern  **mildew** Schaden, versursacht durch Schimmel auf der Blattoberfläche  **smoke** Schaden, verursacht durch Rauch/Ruß | | |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **core:** author bibl biblScope corr date head hi item note p pubPlace publisher rs street title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change licence  **msdescription:** origin  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl corr date graphic hi lb list note pb rs title unclear  **figures:** table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor  **msdescription:** msDesc  **namesdates:** country orgName persName placeName settlement  character data |
| **Note** | Das Element wird für alle unsicheren Transkriptionen verwendet, egal ob es sich um geschriebenes oder gesprochenes Material handelt. Für andere Aspekte der Sicherheit, Unsicherheit und Zuverlässigkeit von Auszeichnung und Transkription, siehe Kapitel [21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CE.html#CE).  Die Elemente <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> und <supplied> werden oft im selben Kontext verwendet. Im Kapitel [11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCOMB) wird diskutiert, welches Element unter welchen Umständen geeignet ist.  Das *@hand*-Attribut verweist auf eine Beschreibung der betreffenden Schreibhand (siehe hierzu Kapitel [11.3.2.1. Document Hands](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHDH)). |
| **Example** | <**u**> ...and then <**unclear** **reason**="background-noise">Nathalie</**unclear**> said ... </**u**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element unclear {  attribute reason  {  list  {  (  "illegible"  | "inaudible"  | "faded"  | "background\_noise"  | "eccentric\_ductus"  )+  }  }?,  attribute agent { text }?,  [undefinedmacro.paraContent](#TEI.undefinedmacro.paraContent)} |

## Model classes

### model.addrPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.addrPart**   groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [[3.6.2. Addresses](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | address |
| **Members** | model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [orgName persName] [model.offsetLike](#TEI.model.offsetLike) [model.persNamePart](#TEI.model.persNamePart) model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [country placeName settlement] ] idno rs] postCode street |

### model.addressLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.addressLike**   groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [[1. The TEI Infrastructure](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#ST)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | address |

### model.attributable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.attributable**   gruppiert Elemente, die ein Wort oder eine Phrase enthalten, welche einer Quelle zugeschrieben werden können. [[3.3.3. Quotation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ) [4.3.2. Floating Texts](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSFLT)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | macro.phraseSeq model.inter |
| **Members** | [model.quoteLike](#TEI.model.quoteLike) |

### model.biblLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.biblLike**   groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [[3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBI)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | model.inter model.msItemPart |
| **Members** | bibl msDesc |

### model.biblPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.biblPart**   groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [[3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBI)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | bibl |
| **Members** | model.imprintPart [biblScope pubPlace publisher] model.respLike [author funder principal respStmt] availability bibl msIdentifier |

### model.common

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.common**   groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | body |
| **Members** | model.divPart [[model.lLike](#TEI.model.lLike) model.pLike [p] ] model.inter [model.attributable [[model.quoteLike](#TEI.model.quoteLike)] model.biblLike [bibl msDesc] [model.egLike](#TEI.model.egLike) [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike) model.listLike [list table] [model.oddDecl](#TEI.model.oddDecl) [model.stageLike](#TEI.model.stageLike)] |

### model.dateLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.dateLike**   groups elements containing temporal expressions. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA) [13.4. Dates](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | date |

### model.divBottom

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divBottom**   groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | body list table |
| **Members** | [model.divBottomPart](#TEI.model.divBottomPart) [model.divWrapper](#TEI.model.divWrapper) |

### model.divLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divLike**   groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | body |
| **Members** | div |

### model.divPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divPart**   groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | macro.specialPara model.common |
| **Members** | [model.lLike](#TEI.model.lLike) model.pLike [p] |

### model.divTop

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divTop**   groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | body list |
| **Members** | model.divTopPart [model.headLike [head] ] [model.divWrapper](#TEI.model.divWrapper) |

### model.divTopPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divTopPart**   groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [[4.6. Title Pages](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | model.divTop |
| **Members** | model.headLike [head] |

### model.emphLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.emphLike**   groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQ)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase |
| **Members** | title |

### model.global

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.global**   groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | address bibl body date head list macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara msItem surface table text |
| **Members** | [model.global.edit](#TEI.model.global.edit) [model.global.meta](#TEI.model.global.meta) model.milestoneLike [anchor lb pb] model.noteLike [note] |

### model.graphicLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.graphicLike**   groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects. [[3.10. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COGR)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | facsimile model.phrase surface table |
| **Members** | graphic |

### model.headLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.headLike**   groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | model.divTopPart msDesc table |
| **Members** | head |

### model.hiLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.hiLike**   groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQ)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase |
| **Members** | hi |

### model.highlighted

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.highlighted**   groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQ)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | bibl model.phrase |
| **Members** | model.emphLike [title] model.hiLike [hi] |

### model.imprintPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.imprintPart**   groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [[3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBI)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | model.biblPart |
| **Members** | biblScope pubPlace publisher |

### model.inter

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.inter**   groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | head macro.paraContent macro.specialPara model.common |
| **Members** | model.attributable [[model.quoteLike](#TEI.model.quoteLike)] model.biblLike [bibl msDesc] [model.egLike](#TEI.model.egLike) [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike) model.listLike [list table] [model.oddDecl](#TEI.model.oddDecl) [model.stageLike](#TEI.model.stageLike) |

### model.limitedPhrase

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.limitedPhrase**   groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | creation macro.phraseSeq.limited |
| **Members** | model.emphLike [title] model.hiLike [hi] model.pPart.data [model.addressLike [address] model.dateLike [date] [model.measureLike](#TEI.model.measureLike) model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [orgName persName] [model.offsetLike](#TEI.model.offsetLike) [model.persNamePart](#TEI.model.persNamePart) model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [country placeName settlement] ] idno rs] ] [model.pPart.editorial](#TEI.model.pPart.editorial) [model.pPart.msdesc](#TEI.model.pPart.msdesc) [model.phrase.xml](#TEI.model.phrase.xml) [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) |

### model.listLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.listLike**   groups list-like elements. [[3.8. Lists](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | abstract model.inter |
| **Members** | list table |

### model.milestoneLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.milestoneLike**   groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC) [3.11.3. Milestone Elements](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | model.global |
| **Members** | anchor lb pb |

### model.msItemPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.msItemPart**   groups elements which can appear within a manuscript item description. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | msItem |
| **Members** | model.biblLike [bibl msDesc] model.msQuoteLike [title] [model.quoteLike](#TEI.model.quoteLike) model.respLike [author funder principal respStmt] idno msItem |

### model.msQuoteLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.msQuoteLike**   groups elements which represent passages such as titles quoted from a manuscript as a part of its description. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | model.msItemPart |
| **Members** | title |

### model.nameLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.nameLike**   groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | model.addrPart model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | model.nameLike.agent [orgName persName] [model.offsetLike](#TEI.model.offsetLike) [model.persNamePart](#TEI.model.persNamePart) model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [country placeName settlement] ] idno rs |

### model.nameLike.agent

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.nameLike.agent**   groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [[3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONA)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike respStmt |
| **Members** | orgName persName |

### model.noteLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.noteLike**   groups globally-available note-like elements. [[3.9. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONO)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | model.global |
| **Members** | note |

### model.pLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pLike**   groups paragraph-like elements. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | abstract editionStmt encodingDesc handDesc history model.divPart msContents msDesc msItem objectDesc physDesc publicationStmt |
| **Members** | p |

### model.pPart.data

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pPart.data**   groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [[3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONA)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase |
| **Members** | model.addressLike [address] model.dateLike [date] [model.measureLike](#TEI.model.measureLike) model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [orgName persName] [model.offsetLike](#TEI.model.offsetLike) [model.persNamePart](#TEI.model.persNamePart) model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [country placeName settlement] ] idno rs] |

### model.pPart.edit

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pPart.edit**   groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [[3.5. Simple Editorial Changes](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | bibl model.phrase |
| **Members** | [model.pPart.editorial](#TEI.model.pPart.editorial) model.pPart.transcriptional [corr unclear] |

### model.pPart.transcriptional

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pPart.transcriptional**   groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [[3.5. Simple Editorial Changes](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | model.pPart.edit |
| **Members** | corr unclear |

### model.phrase

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.phrase**   groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | date head macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara |
| **Members** | model.graphicLike [graphic] model.highlighted [model.emphLike [title] model.hiLike [hi] ] [model.lPart](#TEI.model.lPart) model.pPart.data [model.addressLike [address] model.dateLike [date] [model.measureLike](#TEI.model.measureLike) model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [orgName persName] [model.offsetLike](#TEI.model.offsetLike) [model.persNamePart](#TEI.model.persNamePart) model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [country placeName settlement] ] idno rs] ] model.pPart.edit [[model.pPart.editorial](#TEI.model.pPart.editorial) model.pPart.transcriptional [corr unclear] ] [model.pPart.msdesc](#TEI.model.pPart.msdesc) [model.phrase.xml](#TEI.model.phrase.xml) [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) [model.segLike](#TEI.model.segLike) [model.specDescLike](#TEI.model.specDescLike) |

### model.physDescPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.physDescPart**   groups specialized elements forming part of the physical description of a manuscript or similar written source. | |
| **Module** | msdescription — Appendix |
| **Used by** | physDesc |
| **Members** | handDesc objectDesc |

### model.placeNamePart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.placeNamePart**   groups elements which form part of a place name. [[13.2.3. Place Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | model.placeStateLike msIdentifier |
| **Members** | country placeName settlement |

### model.placeStateLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.placeStateLike**   groups elements which describe changing states of a place. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike |
| **Members** | model.placeNamePart [country placeName settlement] |

### model.profileDescPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.profileDescPart**   umfasst Elemente, die innerhalb des <profileDesc>-Elements genutzt werden und mehrfach auftreten können. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | profileDesc |
| **Members** | abstract creation |

### model.publicationStmtPart.agency

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.publicationStmtPart.agency**   groups the child elements of a <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | publicationStmt |
| **Members** | publisher |

### model.publicationStmtPart.detail

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.publicationStmtPart.detail**   groups the agency-specific child elements of the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | publicationStmt |
| **Members** | [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) address availability date idno pubPlace |

### model.resource

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.resource**   groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | TEI |
| **Members** | facsimile text |

### model.respLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.respLike**   groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | editionStmt model.biblPart model.msItemPart titleStmt |
| **Members** | author funder principal respStmt |

### model.teiHeaderPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.teiHeaderPart**   umfasst Elemente, die innerhalb des TEI-Headers benutzt werden dürfen und mehrmals auftreten können. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | teiHeader |
| **Members** | encodingDesc profileDesc |

### model.titlepagePart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.titlepagePart**   groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a title page, such as <docTitle>, <docAuthor>, <docImprint>, or <epigraph>. [[4.6. Title Pages](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | msItem |
| **Members** | graphic |

## Attribute classes

### att.ascribed

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.ascribed**   provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [[3.3.3. Quotation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ) [8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBA)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | change |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **who** | indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the *@who* attribute.  <**castItem** **type**="role">  <**role** **xml:id**="Barnardo">Bernardo</**role**> </**castItem**> <**castItem** **type**="role">  <**role** **xml:id**="Francisco">Francisco</**role**>  <**roleDesc**>a soldier</**roleDesc**> </**castItem**> <!-- ... --> <**sp** **who**="#Barnardo">  <**speaker**>Bernardo</**speaker**>  <**l** **n**="1">Who's there?</**l**> </**sp**> <**sp** **who**="#Francisco">  <**speaker**>Francisco</**speaker**>  <**l** **n**="2">Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.</**l**> </**sp**> | | | |

### att.breaking

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.breaking**   provides attributes to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace. [[3.11.3. Milestone Elements](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | lb |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **break** | indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include** | **yes** the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace  **no** the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace  **maybe** the encoding does not take any position on this issue. | | In the following lines from the ‘Dream of the Rood’, linebreaks occur in the middle of the words lāðost and reord-berendum.  <**ab**> ...eƿesa tome iu icƿæs ȝeƿorden ƿita heardoſt .  leodum la<**lb** **break**="no"/> ðost ærþan ichim lifes  ƿeȝ rihtne ȝerymde reord be<**lb** **break**="no"/>  rendum hƿæt me þaȝeƿeorðode ƿuldres ealdor ofer... </**ab**> | | | |

### att.canonical

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.canonical**   provides attributes that can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. [[13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDATTSnr)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | att.naming [att.personal [orgName persName placeName] author country institution pubPlace repository settlement] date funder principal publisher resp respStmt title |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **key** | provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.text | | <**author**>  <**name** **key**="name 427308"   **type**="organisation">[New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council]</**name**> </**author**> | | | <**author**>  <**name** **key**="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)"   **ref**="http://www.idref.fr/026927608">Victor Hugo</**name**> </**author**> | | | | **ref** | (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | <**name** **ref**="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338"  **type**="person">Seamus Heaney</**name**> | | | |

### att.citing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.citing**   provides attributes for specifying the specific part of a bibliographic item being cited. [[1.3.1. Attribute Classes](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECAT)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | biblScope |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **unit** | identifies the unit of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume, entry.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Suggested values include:** | **volume** (volume) the element contains a volume number.  **issue** the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue numbers.  **page** (page) the element contains a page number or page range.  **line** the element contains a line number or line range.  **chapter** (chapter) the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or title)  **part** the element identifies a part of a book or collection.  **column** the element identifies a column.  **entry** the element identifies an entry number or label in a list of entries. | | | **from** | specifies the starting point of the range of units indicated by the *@unit* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.word | | | **to** | specifies the end-point of the range of units indicated by the *@unit* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.word | | |

### att.coordinated

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.coordinated**   provides attributes that can be used to position their parent element within a two dimensional coordinate system. | |
| **Module** | transcr — Appendix |
| **Members** | surface |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **start** | indicates the element within a transcription of the text containing at least the start of the writing represented by this zone or surface.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | | **ulx** | gives the x coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | | **uly** | gives the y coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | | **lrx** | gives the x coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | | **lry** | gives the y coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | | **points** | identifies a two dimensional area by means of a series of pairs of numbers, each of which gives the x,y coordinates of a point on a line enclosing the area.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 3–∞ occurrences of teidata.point separated by whitespace | | |

### att.datable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datable**   provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA) [13.4. Dates](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | author change country creation date funder idno licence orgName origin persName placeName principal resp settlement title |
| **Attributes** | att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **calendar** | indicates one or more systems or calendars to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@calendar]"> <sch:assert test="string-length(.) gt 0"> @calendar indicates one or more systems or calendars to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs, but this <sch:name/> element has no textual content.</sch:assert> </sch:rule> | | <**date** **calendar**="#julian #gregorian"  **when**="1829-05-19">Dienstag 7/19  Mai</**date**>. | | | | **period** | supplies pointers to one or more definitions of named periods of time (typically <category>s or <calendar>s) within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | |

### att.datable.custom

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datable.custom**   provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events to a custom dating system (i.e. other than the Gregorian used by W3 and ISO). [[13.4. Dates](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates — Appendix |
| **Members** | att.datable [author change country creation date funder idno licence orgName origin persName placeName principal resp settlement title] |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **when-custom** | supplies the value of a date or time in some custom standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | The following are examples of custom date or time formats that are *not* valid ISO or W3C format normalizations, normalized to a different dating system  <**p**>Alhazen died in Cairo on the <**date** **when**="1040-03-06"   **when-custom**="431-06-12"> 12th day of Jumada t-Tania, 430 AH  </**date**>.</**p**> <**p**>The current world will end at the <**date** **when**="2012-12-21"   **when-custom**="13.0.0.0.0">end of B'ak'tun 13</**date**>.</**p**> <**p**>The Battle of Meggidu  (<**date** **when-custom**="Thutmose\_III:23">23rd year of reign of Thutmose III</**date**>).</**p**> <**p**>Esidorus bixit in pace annos LXX plus minus sub <**date** **when-custom**="Ind:4-10-11">die XI mensis Octobris indictione IIII</**date**> </**p**>  Not all custom date formulations will have Gregorian equivalents.The *@when-custom* attribute and other custom dating are not constrained to a datatype by the TEI, but individual projects are recommended to regularize and document their dating formats. | | | | **notBefore-custom** | specifies the earliest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | | **notAfter-custom** | specifies the latest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | | **from-custom** | indicates the starting point of the period in some custom standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | <**event** **xml:id**="FIRE1"  **datingMethod**="#julian"  **from-custom**="1666-09-02"  **to-custom**="1666-09-05">  <**head**>The Great Fire of London</**head**>  <**p**>The Great Fire of London burned through a large part    of the city of London.</**p**> </**event**> | | | | **to-custom** | indicates the ending point of the period in some custom standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | | **datingPoint** | supplies a pointer to some location defining a named point in time with reference to which the datable item is understood to have occurred   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | | **datingMethod** | supplies a pointer to a <calendar> element or other means of interpreting the values of the custom dating attributes.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | Contayning the Originall, Antiquity, Increaſe, Moderne  eſtate, and deſcription of that Citie, written in the yeare <**date** **when-custom**="1598"  **calendar**="#julian"  **datingMethod**="#julian">1598</**date**>. by Iohn Stow  Citizen of London.  In this example, the *@calendar* attribute points to a <calendar> element for the Julian calendar, specifying that the text content of the <date> element is a Julian date, and the *@datingMethod* attribute also points to the Julian calendar to indicate that the content of the *@when-custom* attribute value is Julian too. | | | <**date** **when**="1382-06-28"  **when-custom**="6890-06-20"  **datingMethod**="#creationOfWorld"> μηνὶ Ἰουνίου εἰς <**num**>κ</**num**> ἔτους <**num**>ςωϞ</**num**> </**date**>  In this example, a date is given in a Mediaeval text measured "from the creation of the world", which is normalised (in *@when*) to the Gregorian date, but is also normalized (in *@when-custom*) to a machine-actionable, numeric version of the date from the Creation. | | | |

### att.datable.iso

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datable.iso**   provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the ISO 8601 standard. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA) [13.4. Dates](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates — Appendix |
| **Members** | att.datable [author change country creation date funder idno licence orgName origin persName placeName principal resp settlement title] |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **when-iso** | supplies the value of a date or time in a standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.iso | | The following are examples of ISO date, time, and date & time formats that are *not* valid W3C format normalizations.  <**date** **when-iso**="1996-09-24T07:25+00">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</**date**> <**date** **when-iso**="1996-09-24T03:25-04">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</**date**> <**time** **when-iso**="1999-01-04T20:42-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</**time**> <**time** **when-iso**="1999-W01-1T20,70-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</**time**> <**date** **when-iso**="2006-05-18T10:03">a few minutes after ten in the morning on Thu 18 May</**date**> <**time** **when-iso**="03:00">3 A.M.</**time**> <**time** **when-iso**="14">around two</**time**> <**time** **when-iso**="15,5">half past three</**time**>  All of the examples of the *@when* attribute in the att.datable.w3c class are also valid with respect to this attribute. | | | He likes to be punctual. I said <**q**>  <**time** **when-iso**="12">around noon</**time**> </**q**>, and he showed up at <**time** **when-iso**="12:00:00">12 O'clock</**time**> on the dot.  The second occurence of <time> could have been encoded with the *@when* attribute, as 12:00:00 is a valid time with respect to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification. The first occurence could not. | | | | **notBefore-iso** | specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.iso | | | **notAfter-iso** | specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.iso | | | **from-iso** | indicates the starting point of the period in standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.iso | | | **to-iso** | indicates the ending point of the period in standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.iso | | |

### att.datable.w3c

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datable.w3c**   provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA) [13.4. Dates](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | att.datable [author change country creation date funder idno licence orgName origin persName placeName principal resp settlement title] |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **when** | supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.w3c | | Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.  <**p**>  <**date** **when**="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</**date**>  <**date** **when**="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</**date**>  <**time** **when**="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</**time**>  <**time** **when**="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</**time**>  <**date** **when**="1962-10">October of 1962</**date**>  <**date** **when**="--06-12">June 12th</**date**>  <**date** **when**="---01">the first of the month</**date**>  <**date** **when**="--08">August</**date**>  <**date** **when**="2006">MMVI</**date**>  <**date** **when**="0056">AD 56</**date**>  <**date** **when**="-0056">56 BC</**date**> </**p**> | | | This list begins in  the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after  Pentecost, in that year the <**date** **calendar**="#julian"  **when**="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</**date**>. | | | <**opener**>  <**dateline**>   <**placeName**>Dorchester, Village,</**placeName**>   <**date** **when**="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</**date**>  </**dateline**>  <**salute**>To    Mrs. Cornell,</**salute**> Sunday <**time** **when**="12:00:00">noon.</**time**> </**opener**> | | | | **notBefore** | specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.w3c | | | **notAfter** | specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.w3c | | | **from** | indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.w3c | | | **to** | indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.w3c | | |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@when]"> <sch:report test="@notBefore|@notAfter|@from|@to"  role="nonfatal">The @when attribute cannot be used with any other att.datable.w3c attributes.</sch:report> </sch:rule> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@from]"> <sch:report test="@notBefore"  role="nonfatal">The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@to]"> <sch:report test="@notAfter"  role="nonfatal">The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule> |
| **Example** | <**date** **from**="1863-05-28" **to**="1863-06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</**date**> |

### att.declarable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.declarable**   provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose *@decls* attribute. [[15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | availability bibl sourceDesc |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **default** | indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.truthValue | | **Legal values are:** | **true** This element is selected if its parent is selected  **false** This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected. [Default] | | |

### att.declaring

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.declaring**   provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [[15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | body div facsimile graphic msDesc p surface text |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **decls** | identifies one or more declarable elements within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | |

### att.divLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.divLike**   provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions. [[4. Default Text Structure](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | div |
| **Attributes** | att.fragmentable (@part)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **org** | (organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **composite** no claim is made about the sequence in which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships.  **uniform** the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence. [Default] | | | **sample** | indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **initial** division lacks material present at end in source.  **medial** division lacks material at start and end.  **final** division lacks material at start.  **unknown** position of sampled material within original unknown.  **complete** division is not a sample. [Default] | | |

### att.docStatus

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.docStatus**   provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | bibl change msDesc revisionDesc |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **status** | describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **approved**  **candidate**  **cleared**  **deprecated**  **draft** [Default]  **embargoed**  **expired**  **frozen**  **galley**  **proposed**  **published**  **recommendation**  **submitted**  **unfinished**  **withdrawn** | | |
| **Example** | <**revisionDesc** **status**="published">  <**change** **when**="2010-10-21"   **status**="published"/>  <**change** **when**="2010-10-02" **status**="cleared"/>  <**change** **when**="2010-08-02"   **status**="embargoed"/>  <**change** **when**="2010-05-01" **status**="frozen"   **who**="#MSM"/>  <**change** **when**="2010-03-01" **status**="draft"   **who**="#LB"/> </**revisionDesc**> |

### att.editLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.editLike**   provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [[3.5. Simple Editorial Changes](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED) [10.3.1. Origination](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#msdates) [13.3.2. The Person Element](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSE) [11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCO)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | corr date orgName origin persName placeName |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **evidence** | indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace | | **Suggested values include:** | **internal** there is internal evidence to support the intervention.  **external** there is external evidence to support the intervention.  **conjecture** the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise. | | | **instant** | indicates whether this is an instant revision or not.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.xTruthValue | | **Default** | false | | |

### att.edition

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.edition**   provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | lb |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **ed** | (edition) supplies a sigil or other arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | | **edRef** | (edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | |
| **Example** | <**l**>Of Mans First Disobedience,<**lb** **ed**="1674"/> and<**lb** **ed**="1667"/> the Fruit</**l**> <**l**>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<**lb** **ed**="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</**l**> <**l**>Brought Death into the World,<**lb** **ed**="1667"/> and all<**lb** **ed**="1674"/> our woe,</**l**> |
| **Example** | <**listBibl**>  <**bibl** **xml:id**="stapledon1937">   <**author**>Olaf Stapledon</**author**>,  <**title**>Starmaker</**title**>, <**publisher**>Methuen</**publisher**>, <**date**>1937</**date**>  </**bibl**>  <**bibl** **xml:id**="stapledon1968">   <**author**>Olaf Stapledon</**author**>,  <**title**>Starmaker</**title**>, <**publisher**>Dover</**publisher**>, <**date**>1968</**date**>  </**bibl**> </**listBibl**> <!-- ... --> <**p**>Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of  the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their  strength maintaining the<**pb** **n**="411" **edRef**="#stapledon1968"/>essentials of their ancient culture,  still living their personal lives in zest and endless  novelty of action, … I saw myself still  preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid  con-<**pb** **n**="291" **edRef**="#stapledon1937"/>sciousness;</**p**> |

### att.fragmentable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.fragmentable**   provides attributes for representing fragmentation of a structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | att.divLike [div] p |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **part** | specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **Y** (yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect  **N** (no) the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness [Default]  **I** (initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element  **M** (medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element  **F** (final) this is the final part of a fragmented element | | |

### att.global

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global**   provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [[1.3.1.1. Global Attributes](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STGA)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | TEI abstract address author availability bibl biblScope cell change corr country creation date div editionStmt encodingDesc facsimile fileDesc funder graphic handDesc head history idno institution item lb licence list msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItem objectDesc orgName origin p pb persName physDesc placeName postCode principal profileDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher repository resp respStmt row settlement sourceDesc street surface table teiHeader text title titleStmt |
| **Attributes** | att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **xml:id** | (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [ID](https://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/#ID) | | | **n** | (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.text | | | **xml:lang** | (language) indicates the language of the element content using a ‘tag’ generated according to [BCP 47](http://www.rfc-editor.org/rfc/bcp/bcp47.txt).   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.language | | <**p**> … The consequences of  this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last <**foreign** **xml:lang**="rap">ariki</**foreign**> or chief  (Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to  ancestral territorial organization.</**p**> | | | | **xml:base** | provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | <**div** **type**="bibl">  <**head**>Bibliography</**head**>  <**listBibl** **xml:base**="http://www.lib.ucdavis.edu/BWRP/Works/">   <**bibl**>    <**author**>     <**name**>Landon, Letitia Elizabeth</**name**>    </**author**>    <**ref** **target**="LandLVowOf.sgm">     <**title**>The Vow of the Peacock</**title**>    </**ref**>   </**bibl**>   <**bibl**>    <**author**>     <**name**>Compton, Margaret Clephane</**name**>    </**author**>    <**ref** **target**="NortMIrene.sgm">     <**title**>Irene, a Poem in Six Cantos</**title**>    </**ref**>   </**bibl**>   <**bibl**>    <**author**>     <**name**>Taylor, Jane</**name**>    </**author**>    <**ref** **target**="TaylJEssay.sgm">     <**title**>Essays in Rhyme on Morals and Manners</**title**>    </**ref**>   </**bibl**>  </**listBibl**> </**div**> | | | | **xml:space** | signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **default** signals that the application's default white-space processing modes are acceptable  **preserve** indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space | | |

### att.global.change

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.change**   provides attributes allowing its member elements to specify one or more states or revision campaigns with which they are associated. | |
| **Module** | transcr — Appendix |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI abstract address author availability bibl biblScope cell change corr country creation date div editionStmt encodingDesc facsimile fileDesc funder graphic handDesc head history idno institution item lb licence list msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItem objectDesc orgName origin p pb persName physDesc placeName postCode principal profileDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher repository resp respStmt row settlement sourceDesc street surface table teiHeader text title titleStmt] |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **change** | points to one or more <change> elements documenting a state or revision campaign to which the element bearing this attribute and its children have been assigned by the encoder.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | |

### att.global.facs

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.facs**   provides attributes used to express correspondence between an element and all or part of a facsimile image or surface. [[11.1. Digital Facsimiles](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHFAX)] | |
| **Module** | transcr — Appendix |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI abstract address author availability bibl biblScope cell change corr country creation date div editionStmt encodingDesc facsimile fileDesc funder graphic handDesc head history idno institution item lb licence list msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItem objectDesc orgName origin p pb persName physDesc placeName postCode principal profileDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher repository resp respStmt row settlement sourceDesc street surface table teiHeader text title titleStmt] |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **facs** | (facsimile) points to one or more images, portions of an image, or surfaces which correspond to the current element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | |

### att.global.linking

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.linking**   provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [[16. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SA)] | |
| **Module** | linking — Appendix |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI abstract address author availability bibl biblScope cell change corr country creation date div editionStmt encodingDesc facsimile fileDesc funder graphic handDesc head history idno institution item lb licence list msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItem objectDesc orgName origin p pb persName physDesc placeName postCode principal profileDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher repository resp respStmt row settlement sourceDesc street surface table teiHeader text title titleStmt] |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **corresp** | (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | <**group**>  <**text** **xml:id**="t1-g1-t1"   **xml:lang**="mi">   <**body** **xml:id**="t1-g1-t1-body1">    <**div** **type**="chapter">     <**head**>He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</**head**>     <**p**>…</**p**>    </**div**>   </**body**>  </**text**>  <**text** **xml:id**="t1-g1-t2"   **xml:lang**="en">   <**body** **xml:id**="t1-g1-t2-body1"    **corresp**="#t1-g1-t1-body1">    <**div** **type**="chapter">     <**head**>An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal of Native Lands, 1876.</**head**>     <**p**>…</**p**>    </**div**>   </**body**>  </**text**> </**group**>  In this example a <group> contains two <text>s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using *@corresp*. The language is indicated using *@xml:lang*, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the *@corresp* and the tag pointed to by the *@corresp* inherit the value from their immediate parent. | | | <!-- In a placeography called "places.xml" --><**place** **xml:id**="LOND1"  **corresp**="people.xml#LOND2 people.xml#GENI1">  <**placeName**>London</**placeName**>  <**desc**>The city of London...</**desc**> </**place**> <!-- In a literary personography called "people.xml" --> <**person** **xml:id**="LOND2"  **corresp**="places.xml#LOND1 #GENI1">  <**persName** **type**="lit">London</**persName**>  <**note**>   <**p**>Allegorical character representing the city of <**placeName** **ref**="places.xml#LOND1">London</**placeName**>.</**p**>  </**note**> </**person**> <**person** **xml:id**="GENI1"  **corresp**="places.xml#LOND1 #LOND2">  <**persName** **type**="lit">London’s Genius</**persName**>  <**note**>   <**p**>Personification of London’s genius. Appears as an      allegorical character in mayoral shows.   </**p**>  </**note**> </**person**>  In this example, a <place> element containing information about the city of London is linked with two <person> elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them. | | | | **synch** | (synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | | **sameAs** | points to an element that is the same as the current element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | | **copyOf** | points to an element of which the current element is a copy.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | | **next** | points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | | **prev** | (previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | | **exclude** | points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | | **select** | selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced by the number of alternants not selected.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | |

### att.global.rendition

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.rendition**   provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [[1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STGAre)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI abstract address author availability bibl biblScope cell change corr country creation date div editionStmt encodingDesc facsimile fileDesc funder graphic handDesc head history idno institution item lb licence list msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItem objectDesc orgName origin p pb persName physDesc placeName postCode principal profileDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher repository resp respStmt row settlement sourceDesc street surface table teiHeader text title titleStmt] hi |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **rend** | (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | <**head** **rend**="align(center) case(allcaps)">  <**lb**/>To The <**lb**/>Duchesse <**lb**/>of <**lb**/>Newcastle, <**lb**/>On Her <**lb**/>  <**hi** **rend**="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</**hi**>.  </**head**> | | | | **style** | contains an expression in some formal style definition language which defines the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.text | | <**head** **style**="text-align: center; font-variant: small-caps">  <**lb**/>To The <**lb**/>Duchesse <**lb**/>of <**lb**/>Newcastle, <**lb**/>On Her <**lb**/>  <**hi** **style**="font-variant: normal">New Blazing-World</**hi**>.  </**head**> | | | | **rendition** | points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | <**head** **rendition**="#ac #sc">  <**lb**/>To The <**lb**/>Duchesse <**lb**/>of <**lb**/>Newcastle, <**lb**/>On Her <**lb**/>  <**hi** **rendition**="#normal">New Blazing-World</**hi**>.  </**head**> <!-- elsewhere... --> <**rendition** **xml:id**="sc"  **scheme**="css">font-variant: small-caps</**rendition**> <**rendition** **xml:id**="normal"  **scheme**="css">font-variant: normal</**rendition**> <**rendition** **xml:id**="ac"  **scheme**="css">text-align: center</**rendition**> | | | |

### att.global.responsibility

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.responsibility**   provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [[1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STGAso) [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED) [11.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHHR) [17.3. Spans and Interpretations](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AISP) [13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDATTSnr)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI abstract address author availability bibl biblScope cell change corr country creation date div editionStmt encodingDesc facsimile fileDesc funder graphic handDesc head history idno institution item lb licence list msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItem objectDesc orgName origin p pb persName physDesc placeName postCode principal profileDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher repository resp respStmt row settlement sourceDesc street surface table teiHeader text title titleStmt] |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **cert** | (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.probCert | | | **resp** | (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | |
| **Example** | Blessed are the <**choice**>  <**sic**>cheesemakers</**sic**>  <**corr** **resp**="#editor" **cert**="high">peacemakers</**corr**> </**choice**>: for they shall be called the children of God. |
| **Example** | <!-- in the <text> ... --><**lg**> <!-- ... -->  <**l**>Punkes, Panders, baſe extortionizing    sla<**choice**>    <**sic**>n</**sic**>    <**corr** **resp**="#JENS1\_transcriber">u</**corr**>   </**choice**>es,</**l**> <!-- ... --> </**lg**> <!-- in the <teiHeader> ... --> <!-- ... --> <**respStmt** **xml:id**="JENS1\_transcriber">  <**resp** **when**="2014">Transcriber</**resp**>  <**name**>Janelle Jenstad</**name**> </**respStmt**> |

### att.global.source

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.source**   provides attributes used by elements to point to an external source. [[1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STGAso) [3.3.3. Quotation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ) [8.3.4. Writing](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBAWR)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI abstract address author availability bibl biblScope cell change corr country creation date div editionStmt encodingDesc facsimile fileDesc funder graphic handDesc head history idno institution item lb licence list msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItem objectDesc orgName origin p pb persName physDesc placeName postCode principal profileDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher repository resp respStmt row settlement sourceDesc street surface table teiHeader text title titleStmt] |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **source** | specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*/@source"> <sch:let name="srcs"  value="tokenize( normalize-space(.),' ')"/> <sch:report test="( parent::tei:classRef | parent::tei:dataRef | parent::tei:elementRef | parent::tei:macroRef | parent::tei:moduleRef | parent::tei:schemaSpec ) and $srcs[2]"> When used on a schema description element (like <sch:value-of select="name(..)"/>), the @source attribute should have only 1 value. (This one has <sch:value-of select="count($srcs)"/>.) </sch:report> </sch:rule> | | |
| **Example** | <**p**> <!-- ... --> As Willard McCarty (<**bibl** **xml:id**="mcc\_2012">2012, p.2</**bibl**>) tells us, <**quote** **source**="#mcc\_2012">‘Collaboration’ is a problematic and should be a contested    term.</**quote**> <!-- ... --> </**p**> |
| **Example** | <**p**> <!-- ... -->  <**quote** **source**="#chicago\_15\_ed">Grammatical theories are in flux, and the more we learn, the    less we seem to know.</**quote**> <!-- ... --> </**p**> <!-- ... --> <**bibl** **xml:id**="chicago\_15\_ed">  <**title** **level**="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</**title**>, <**edition**>15th edition</**edition**>. <**pubPlace**>Chicago</**pubPlace**>: <**publisher**>University of    Chicago Press</**publisher**> (<**date**>2003</**date**>), <**biblScope** **unit**="page">p.147</**biblScope**>.  </**bibl**> |
| **Example** | <**elementRef** **key**="p" **source**="tei:2.0.1"/>  Include in the schema an element named <p> available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release. |
| **Example** | <**schemaSpec** **ident**="myODD"  **source**="mycompiledODD.xml"> <!-- further declarations specifying the components required --> </**schemaSpec**>  Create a schema using components taken from the file mycompiledODD.xml. |

### att.internetMedia

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.internetMedia**   provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | att.media [graphic] |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **mimeType** | (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | |
| **Example** | In this example *@mimeType* is used to indicate that the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8.  <**ref** **mimeType**="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8"  **target**="https://raw.githubusercontent.com/TEIC/TEI/dev/P5/Source/guidelines-en.xml"/> |

### att.media

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.media**   provides attributes for specifying display and related properties of external media. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | graphic |
| **Attributes** | att.internetMedia (@mimeType)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **width** | Where the media are displayed, indicates the display width   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.outputMeasurement | | | **height** | Where the media are displayed, indicates the display height   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.outputMeasurement | | | **scale** | Where the media are displayed, indicates a scale factor to be applied when generating the desired display size   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | |

### att.msClass

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.msClass**   provides attributes to indicate text type or classification. [[10.6. Intellectual Content](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#msco) [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#mscoit)] | |
| **Module** | msdescription — Appendix |
| **Members** | msContents msItem |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **class** | identifies the text types or classifications applicable to this item by pointing to other elements or resources defining the classification concerned.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | |

### att.msExcerpt

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.msExcerpt**   (manuscript excerpt) provides attributes used to describe excerpts from a manuscript placed in a description thereof. [[10.6. Intellectual Content](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#msco)] | |
| **Module** | msdescription — Appendix |
| **Members** | msContents msItem |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **defective** | indicates whether the passage being quoted is defective, i.e. incomplete through loss or damage.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.xTruthValue | | |

### att.naming

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.naming**   provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [[3.6.1. Referring Strings](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONARS) [13.3.6. Names and Nyms](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDNYM)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | att.personal [orgName persName placeName] author country institution pubPlace repository settlement |
| **Attributes** | att.canonical (@key, @ref)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace | | | **nymRef** | (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (nym) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | |

### att.personal

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.personal**   (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | orgName persName placeName |
| **Attributes** | att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **full** | indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **yes** (yes) the name component is spelled out in full. [Default]  **abb** (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.  **init** (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial. | | | **sort** | (sort) specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.count | | |

### att.placement

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.placement**   provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [[3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDADD) [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHAD)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | head |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **place** | specifies where this item is placed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace | | **Suggested values include:** | **top** at the top of the page  **bottom** at the foot of the page  **margin** in the margin (left, right, or both)  **opposite** on the opposite, i.e. facing, page  **overleaf** on the other side of the leaf  **above** above the line  **right** to the right, e.g. to the right of a vertical line of text, or to the right of a figure  **below** below the line  **left** to the left, e.g. to the left of a vertical line of text, or to the left of a figure  **end** at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.  **inline** within the body of the text.  **inspace** in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe. | | <**add** **place**="margin">[An addition written in the margin]</**add**> <**add** **place**="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the  foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</**add**> | | | <**note** **place**="bottom">Ibid, p.7</**note**> | | | |

### att.pointing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.pointing**   provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [[1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STGAla) [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COXR)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | licence |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **targetLang** | specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by *@target*, using a ‘language tag’ generated according to [BCP 47](http://www.rfc-editor.org/rfc/bcp/bcp47.txt).   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.language | | **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]"> <sch:assert test="@target">@targetLang should only be used on <sch:name/> if @target is specified.</sch:assert> </sch:rule> | | <**linkGrp** **xml:id**="pol-swh\_aln\_2.1-linkGrp">  <**ptr** **xml:id**="pol-swh\_aln\_2.1.1-ptr"   **target**="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol\_txt\_1-head"   **type**="tuv"   **targetLang**="pl"/>  <**ptr** **xml:id**="pol-swh\_aln\_2.1.2-ptr"   **target**="swh/UDHR/text.xml#swh\_txt\_1-head"   **type**="tuv"   **targetLang**="sw"/> </**linkGrp**>  In the example above, the <linkGrp> combines pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili. | | | | **target** | specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | | **evaluate** | (evaluate) specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **all** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.  **one** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.  **none** no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target. | | |

### att.ranging

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.ranging**   provides attributes for describing numerical ranges. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | [att.dimensions](#TEI.att.dimensions) [date] |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **atLeast** | gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | | **atMost** | gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | | **min** | where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | | **max** | where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | | **confidence** | specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by *@min* and *@max*, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.probability | | |
| **Example** | The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from <**del** **rend**="overstrike">  <**gap** **reason**="illegible"   **extent**="one or two letters" **atLeast**="1" **atMost**="2" **unit**="chars"/> </**del**> Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York. |

### att.resourced

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.resourced**   provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | graphic |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **url** | (uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media concerned may be obtained.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | |

### att.sortable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.sortable**   provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [[9.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DI.html#DIBO)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | bibl idno item list msDesc |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **sortKey** | supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.word | | David's other principal backer, Josiah  ha-Kohen <**index** **indexName**="NAMES">  <**term** **sortKey**="Azarya\_Josiah\_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</**term**> </**index**> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was David's own first  cousin. | | | |

### att.spanning

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.spanning**   provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [[11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHAD) [1.3.1. Attribute Classes](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECAT)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | lb |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **spanTo** | indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | **Schematron** | The @spanTo attribute must point to an element following the current element  <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@spanTo]"> <sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2)) and following::\*[@xml:id=substring(current()/@spanTo,2)]">The element indicated by @spanTo (<sch:value-of select="@spanTo"/>) must follow the current element <sch:name/> </sch:assert> </sch:rule> | | |

### att.tableDecoration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.tableDecoration**   provides attributes used to decorate rows or cells of a table. [[14. Tables, Formulæ, Graphics, and Notated Music](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FT.html#FT)] | |
| **Module** | figures — Appendix |
| **Members** | cell row |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | (role) indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Suggested values include:** | **label** labelling or descriptive information only.  **data** data values. [Default] | | | **rows** | (rows) indicates the number of rows occupied by this cell or row.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.count | | **Default** | 1 | | | **cols** | (columns) indicates the number of columns occupied by this cell or row.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.count | | **Default** | 1 | | |

### att.typed

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.typed**   provides attributes that can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [[1.3.1. Attribute Classes](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECAT) [17.1.1. Words and Above](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILCW) [3.6.1. Referring Strings](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONARS) [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COXR) [3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAB) [3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COVE) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL) [4.1.1. Un-numbered Divisions](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDIV1) [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDIV2) [4.2.1. Headings and Trailers](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSHD) [4.4. Virtual Divisions](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSVIRT) [13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSREL) [11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCO) [16.1.1. Pointers and Links](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAPTL) [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASE) [12.2. Linking the Apparatus to the Text](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TC.html#TCAPLK) [22.5.1.2. Defining Content Models: RELAX NG](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDTAGCONT) [8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBA) [23.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/USE.html#MDMDAL)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | TEI anchor bibl change corr country date div graphic head idno lb list msDesc note orgName pb persName placeName rs settlement surface table text title |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | <**div** **type**="verse">  <**head**>Night in Tarras</**head**>  <**lg** **type**="stanza">   <**l**>At evening tramping on the hot white road</**l**>   <**l**>…</**l**>  </**lg**>  <**lg** **type**="stanza">   <**l**>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</**l**>   <**l**>…</**l**>  </**lg**> </**div**> | | | | **subtype** | (subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The <sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert> </sch:rule> |

### att.written

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.written**   provides attributes to indicate the hand in which the content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [[1.3.1. Attribute Classes](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECAT)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Members** | div head hi p text |
| **Attributes** | |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **hand** | points to a <handNote> element describing the hand considered responsible for the content of the element concerned.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | |

## Macros

### macro.paraContent

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.paraContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | corr hi p title unclear |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate minOccurs="0"   maxOccurs="unbounded">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.inter"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>   <elementRef key="lg"/>   <classRef key="model.lLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedmacro.paraContent =  (  text  | [undefinedmodel.gLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.gLike) | [undefinedmodel.phrase](#TEI.undefinedmodel.phrase) | [undefinedmodel.inter](#TEI.undefinedmodel.inter) | [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global) | [lg](#TEI.lg) | [undefinedmodel.lLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.lLike) )\* |

### macro.phraseSeq

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.phraseSeq** (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [[1.4.1. Standard Content Models](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECST)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | author biblScope country orgName persName placeName pubPlace publisher rs settlement street |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate minOccurs="0"   maxOccurs="unbounded">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.attributable"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedmacro.phraseSeq =  (  text  | [undefinedmodel.gLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.gLike) | [undefinedmodel.attributable](#TEI.undefinedmodel.attributable) | [undefinedmodel.phrase](#TEI.undefinedmodel.phrase) | [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global) )\* |

### macro.phraseSeq.limited

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.phraseSeq.limited** (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [[1.4.1. Standard Content Models](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECST)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | funder institution principal repository resp |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate minOccurs="0"   maxOccurs="unbounded">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedmacro.phraseSeq.limited =  ( text | [undefinedmodel.limitedPhrase](#TEI.undefinedmodel.limitedPhrase) | [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global) )\* |

### macro.specialPara

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.specialPara** ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | cell change item licence note origin |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate minOccurs="0"   maxOccurs="unbounded">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.inter"/>   <classRef key="model.divPart"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedmacro.specialPara =  (  text  | [undefinedmodel.gLike](#TEI.undefinedmodel.gLike) | [undefinedmodel.phrase](#TEI.undefinedmodel.phrase) | [undefinedmodel.inter](#TEI.undefinedmodel.inter) | [undefinedmodel.divPart](#TEI.undefinedmodel.divPart) | [undefinedmodel.global](#TEI.undefinedmodel.global) )\* |

## Datatypes

### teidata.certainty

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.certainty** defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | teidata.probCert |
| **Content model** | <content>  <valList type="closed">   <valItem ident="high"/>   <valItem ident="medium"/>   <valItem ident="low"/>   <valItem ident="unknown"/>  </valList> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown" |

### teidata.count

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.count** defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | Element:   * handDesc/@hands * table/@rows * table/@cols |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger |

### teidata.duration.iso

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.duration.iso** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" } |
| **Example** | <**time** **dur-iso**="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</**time**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **dur-iso**="P1,5D">a day and a half</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **dur-iso**="P14D">a fortnight</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**time** **dur-iso**="PT0.02S">20 ms</**time**> |

### teidata.duration.w3c

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.duration.w3c** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="duration"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration |
| **Example** | <**time** **dur**="PT45M">forty-five minutes</**time**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **dur**="P1DT12H">a day and a half</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **dur**="P7D">a week</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**time** **dur**="PT0.02S">20 ms</**time**> |

### teidata.enumerated

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.enumerated** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | Element:   * availability/@status * idno/@type * list/@type * note/@type * objectDesc/@form * surface/@attachment * title/@type * title/@level * unclear/@reason * unclear/@agent |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef key="teidata.word"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.enumerated = [teidata.word](#TEI.teidata.word) |

### teidata.language

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.language** defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [[6.1. Language Identification](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CH.html#CHSH)] | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="language"/>   <valList>    <valItem ident=""/>   </valList>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.language = xsd:language | ( "" ) |

### teidata.name

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.name** defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="Name"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.name = xsd:Name |

### teidata.numeric

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.numeric** defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="double"/>   <dataRef name="token"    restriction="(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)"/>   <dataRef name="decimal"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.numeric =  xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal |

### teidata.outputMeasurement

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.outputMeasurement** defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.outputMeasurement =  token  {  pattern = "[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"  } |
| **Example** | <**figure**>  <**head**>The TEI Logo</**head**>  <**figDesc**>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters <**mentioned**>TEI</**mentioned**> in    between and <**mentioned**>text encoding initiative</**mentioned**> underneath, all on a white    background.</**figDesc**>  <**graphic** **height**="600px" **width**="600px"   **url**="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg"/> </**figure**> |

### teidata.pattern

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.pattern** defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.pattern = token |

### teidata.point

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.point** defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.point =  token { pattern = "(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)" } |
| **Example** | <**facsimile**>  <**surface** **ulx**="0" **uly**="0" **lrx**="400" **lry**="280">   <**zone** **points**="220,100 300,210 170,250 123,234">    <**graphic** **url**="handwriting.png"/>   </**zone**>  </**surface**> </**facsimile**> |

### teidata.pointer

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.pointer** defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | Element:   * change/@target * pb/@facs |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef restriction="\S+" name="anyURI"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI { pattern = "\S+" } |

### teidata.probCert

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.probCert** defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef key="teidata.probability"/>   <dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.probCert = [teidata.probability](#TEI.teidata.probability) | [teidata.certainty](#TEI.teidata.certainty) |

### teidata.probability

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.probability** defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | teidata.probCert |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="double"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.probability = xsd:double |

### teidata.replacement

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.replacement** defines attribute values which contain a replacement template. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.replacement = text |

### teidata.temporal.iso

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.temporal.iso** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the international standard *Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times*. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | Element:   * date/@notBefore-iso * date/@notAfter-iso |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="date"/>   <dataRef name="gYear"/>   <dataRef name="gMonth"/>   <dataRef name="gDay"/>   <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>   <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>   <dataRef name="time"/>   <dataRef name="dateTime"/>   <dataRef name="token"    restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.temporal.iso =  xsd:date  | xsd:gYear  | xsd:gMonth  | xsd:gDay  | xsd:gYearMonth  | xsd:gMonthDay  | xsd:time  | xsd:dateTime  | token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" } |

### teidata.temporal.w3c

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.temporal.w3c** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | Element:   * date/@when |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="date"/>   <dataRef name="gYear"/>   <dataRef name="gMonth"/>   <dataRef name="gDay"/>   <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>   <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>   <dataRef name="time"/>   <dataRef name="dateTime"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.temporal.w3c =  xsd:date  | xsd:gYear  | xsd:gMonth  | xsd:gDay  | xsd:gYearMonth  | xsd:gMonthDay  | xsd:time  | xsd:dateTime |

### teidata.text

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.text** defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of Unicode characters possibly including whitespace. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | Element:   * anchor/@xml:id * pb/@n * rs/@key |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="string"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.text = string |

### teidata.truthValue

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.truthValue** defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | Element:   * surface/@flipping |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="boolean"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean |

### teidata.version

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.version** defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | Element:   * TEI/@version |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.version = token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" } |

### teidata.versionNumber

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.versionNumber** defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*(\.[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*){0,3}"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.versionNumber =  token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*(\.[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*){0,3}" } |

### teidata.word

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.word** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** | teidata.enumeratedElement:   * hi/@rend |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.word = token { pattern = "[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+" } |

### teidata.xTruthValue

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.xTruthValue** (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="boolean"/>   <valList>    <valItem ident="unknown"/>    <valItem ident="inapplicable"/>   </valList>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean | ( "unknown" | "inapplicable" ) |

### teidata.xpath

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.xpath** defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression. | |
| **Module** | tei — Appendix |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | undefinedteidata.xpath = text |

## Constraints

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Schematron** | <s:rule context="//tei:address"> <s:report test="not(parent::tei:funder)"><address> schould be only used in a funder element in the header!</s:report> </s:rule> |
| **Schematron** | <s:rule context="//tei:country|//tei:settlement"> <s:report test="not(parent::tei:placeName)"><country> &amp; <settlement> schould be only used in a funder element in the header!</s:report> </s:rule> |
| **Schematron** | <s:rule context="//tei:placeName|//tei:persName|//tei:orgName|//tei:msDesc"> <s:let name="el\_name" value="local-name(.)"/> <s:report test="not(ancestor::tei:teiHeader)"><"<s:value-of select="$el\_name"/>"> schould be only used the teiHeader!</s:report> </s:rule> |